FRENCH · HIGH SCHOOL · LEVEL I

French I

First edition · 12 units · 36 lessons · one school year · Midterm and final exam · A video for every lesson · Quick reference

FIRST EDITION

Course guide

French I is the first year of high-school French, written for students who are beginning the language or beginning it again with seriousness. Over thirty-six weeks the student learns to greet and converse, describe people, talk about family, school, time, food, the city, the body and clothes, the weather and the seasons, the home and the daily routine, the feasts of the Church, and what happened yesterday, with the grammar that holds it together: the present tense of -er verbs and the great irregulars (être, avoir, aller, faire, prendre, vouloir, pouvoir), adjective agreement, possessives, the partitive, the near future, reflexive verbs and the passé composé with avoir and être.

Every lesson opens with a true story, from the Bible or from the history of the French-speaking world, and each unit studies a great painting or picture: Courbet's Bonjour Monsieur Courbet, Vigée Le Brun's self-portrait, the Le Nain brothers' peasant family, Geoffroy's classroom, Monet's Luncheon and Magpie, Pissarro's Paris boulevard, Renoir's Umbrellas, Chardin's servant home from market, Georges de La Tour's Saint Joseph the Carpenter, the Bayeux Tapestry and Champlain's drawing of his Habitation at Quebec. Every lesson has a verse in the King James Version and the Louis Segond Bible.

The year closes with a five-minute presentation in French on a French-speaking country or region, its history and its church, and with Revelation 7:9: a great multitude of all nations, and kindreds, and people, and tongues.

> Every embedded video comes from a channel Jerad has approved for School Launch: Learn French With Alexa (a friendly teacher from France whose short lessons are the workhorse of this course), FrenchPod101 (clear vocabulary and grammar videos), Alain Le Lait

> (short teaching songs; YouTube lists his channel as tialela99), the Titounis (traditional French songs and rhymes) and Français avec Pierre (a French teacher whose longer lessons are used in short segments). A few lessons use a single approved read-along story from BookBox French. The videos play in YouTube's privacy-enhanced player. Preview each one first and stay nearby, since YouTube shows its own suggestions when a video ends; some channels close with an invitation to subscribe, and you can stop the video when the lesson ends. The new videos were chosen by title and channel, so please preview them before the lesson. You will hear small differences between speakers from France, Belgium, Switzerland and Quebec; all are good French.

Start with Lesson 1.1 →

Who it is for

Written for high-school students (grade 9 or older, about ages 14 and up) beginning French; no French is assumed. Students who finished the School Launch Grade 5–8 French courses will recognize much of Units 1–6 and can move faster there. The student reads the lessons on his or her own; a parent or teacher listens to the oral work, asks the oral questions on the tests and checks the written work against the answer keys.

How to use this course

1. **The weekly rhythm.** The year has 36 lessons, one a week, each with four sessions of 40–50 minutes. Session 1 is the warm-up, the story, the How French works teaching and the video. Session 2 is the picture study (in one lesson of each unit) or the backup video, the key terms and the French notebook. Session 3 is the activity. Session 4 is the worked examples, the practice, the game and the worksheet. At the end of each unit, take the unit test and do the unit challenge.
2. **Speak every day.** A language is learned with the mouth as well as the eyes. Read every French example aloud, say the verb charts standing up, and greet the family in French. Ten minutes of French out loud every day does more than an hour of silent reading once a week.

3. **Story, then grammar, then doing.** The paragraph marked *The story* tells a Bible story or a true story from history; the paragraphs marked *How French works* teach the grammar with examples. After each paragraph, close the book and explain it back in your own words.
4. **Flashcards and the word list.** Every lesson ends with a vocabulary list; make a flashcard for each word (French on the front with its le or la, English on the back) and each verb chart. Run the whole deck at the start of every session; a card right three days in a row moves to a weekly pile.
5. **The French notebook.** Keep one notebook for the year for the charts, the copied verses, the worked examples and the activities. Date every page.
6. **Tests and exams.** Each unit ends with a 50-point test; the first questions are oral, asked by the parent. The midterm after Unit 6 and the final after Unit 12 are 100 points each. Answer keys for every worksheet, unit test and exam are separate PDFs for the parent.
7. **The French Bible.** French verses are quoted from the Louis Segond Bible of 1910, the public-domain French Bible that French-speaking Protestants have read for more than a century, the French counterpart of the King James. Where the King James prints the LORD in capitals, Louis Segond writes l'Éternel, the Eternal One. The English verse is always the King James Version, quoted exactly.

Scope and sequence

UNIT 1 · WEEKS 1–3

Bonjour! Saluer et Prononcer

Greetings, courtesy and the two words for you, tu and vous, with Courbet's Bonjour Monsieur Courbet and the angel's greeting to Mary; the French alphabet, its accent marks and its main sound rules, read aloud in John 1:1; and the numbers from 0 to 30, with ages and the first day of creation.

1.1 Bonjour: Greetings, Tu and Vous

1.2 L'Alphabet: Letters, Accents and Sounds

1.3 Les Nombres de 0 à 30

UNIT 2 · WEEKS 4–6

Qui Suis-Je? Être et Décrire

Introducing yourself and others (je m'appelle, j'habite à, je viens de), with the shepherd who calls his sheep by name; the verb être and the subject pronouns, with God's name I AM in Exodus 3:14; and describing people with adjectives that agree, masculine and feminine, with nationalities, Vigée Le Brun's self-portrait in a straw hat, and male and female created he them.

2.1 Je M'appelle: Introductions

2.2 Je Suis: The Verb Être

2.3 Grand ou Grande? Describing People

UNIT 3 · WEEKS 7–9

La Famille: Avoir et les Possessifs

The family: words for every relative, with the Le Nain brothers' Peasant Family and the commandment Honour thy father and thy mother; the verb avoir and its everyday expressions (avoir faim, avoir peur, avoir raison), with He that hath the Son hath life; and the possessive adjectives mon, ma, mes, ton, ta, tes and the rest, with Ruth's thy people shall be my people.

3.1 Ma Famille: Family Words

3.2 J'ai: The Verb Avoir

3.3 Mon, Ma, Mes: Possessive Adjectives

UNIT 4 · WEEKS 10–12

L'École et l'Heure: Articles et Verbes en -er

School: classroom words with the articles le, la, l', les, un, une, des and regular plurals, with Jean Geoffroy's classroom of 1889 and The fear of the Lord is the beginning of knowledge; the present tense of regular -er verbs (parler, aimer, étudier), with Love one another; and telling time, the days and the months, with Evening, and morning, and at noon, will I pray.

4.1 En Classe: School Words, Articles and Plurals

4.2 Je Parle: Regular -er Verbs

4.3 Quelle Heure Est-il? Time, Days and Months

UNIT 5 · WEEKS 13–15

À Table! La Nourriture et le Partitif

Food and meals: a hundred words for the French table with Monet's Luncheon and Man shall not live by bread alone; the partitive articles du, de la, de l', des (some bread, some water), with the risen Christ's breakfast of fish and bread; and ordering in a café or restaurant with prendre and je voudrais, with Behold, I stand at the door, and knock.

5.1 Le Repas: Food, Drinks and Meals

5.2 Du Pain et du Poisson: The Partitive

5.3 Au Café: Prendre and Ordering Politely

UNIT 6 · WEEKS 16–18

En Ville: Aller et le Futur Proche

The town: places and shops with the prepositions of place, with Pissarro's Boulevard Montmartre and A city that is set on an hill cannot be hid; the verb aller with au, à la, aux, with I was glad when they said unto me, Let us go into the house of the LORD; and the near future (je vais visiter) with directions in the street, with I go to prepare a place for you. The midterm exam follows this unit.

6.1 La Ville: Places and Prepositions

6.2 Je Vais à l'Église: The Verb Aller

6.3 Je Vais Visiter: The Near Future and Directions

UNIT 7 · WEEKS 19–21

Le Corps et les Vêtements

The body: its parts and avoir mal à, with As the body is one, and hath many members; clothes and colors, with adjective agreement, Renoir's Umbrellas and Put on therefore … kindness, humbleness of mind; and shopping for clothes with the demonstratives ce, cet, cette, ces and the adjectives that go before the noun, with Strength and honour are her clothing.

7.1 Le Corps: The Body and Avoir Mal

7.2 Les Vêtements: Clothes, Colors and Porter

7.3 Au Magasin: Ce, Cette and Adjectives Before the Noun

UNIT 8 · WEEKS 22–24

Le Temps et les Saisons: Le Verbe Faire

Weather: Quel temps fait-il? with He maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good; the seasons and the year, with Monet's Magpie and Seedtime and harvest, and cold and heat, and summer and winter … shall not cease; and the verb faire with sports and activities (faire du vélo, jouer au foot), with Whatsoever ye do in word or deed, do all in the name of the Lord Jesus.

8.1 Quel Temps Fait-il? The Weather

8.2 Les Quatre Saisons: Seasons and the Year

8.3 Je Fais du Vélo: Faire, Sports and Activities

UNIT 9 · WEEKS 25–27

La Vie Quotidienne: Verbes Pronominaux et Modaux

Daily life: the morning routine with reflexive verbs (je me lève, je m'habille), with Jesus rising a great while before day to pray; the house, its rooms and the chores, with Chardin's servant home from market and Through wisdom is an house builded; and the verbs vouloir, pouvoir and devoir, with Not as I will, but as thou wilt.

9.1 Je Me Lève: Reflexive Verbs and the Daily Routine

9.2 La Maison: Rooms, Furniture and Chores

9.3 Je Veux, Je Peux, Je Dois: Modal Verbs

UNIT 10 · WEEKS 28–30

Fêtes et Foi: Noël, Pâques et le Credo

The feasts of the Church in French: Christmas, with the angels' Glory to God in the highest, Georges de La Tour's Saint Joseph the Carpenter and the regular -ir verbs (finir, choisir, obéir); Easter, with He is not here: for he is risen and the regular -re verbs (attendre, entendre, répondre); and the verbs croire and voir, with the Apostles' Creed in French and I am the resurrection, and the life.

10.1 Noël: Christmas and Regular -ir Verbs

10.2 Pâques: Easter and Regular -re Verbs

10.3 Je Crois: Croire, Voir and the Creed

UNIT 11 · WEEKS 31–33

Le Passé: Le Passé Composé

Telling what happened: the passé composé with avoir and regular past participles, with Paul's I have fought a good fight; irregular past participles (fait, vu, pris, eu, été), with That which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, and the Bayeux Tapestry; and the passé composé with être and agreement, with He came unto his own, and his own received him not.

11.1 J'ai Parlé: The Passé Composé with Avoir

11.2 J'ai Vu, J'ai Fait: Irregular Past Participles

11.3 Je Suis Venu: The Passé Composé with Être

UNIT 12 · WEEKS 34–36

Le Monde Francophone

The French-speaking world: countries, nationalities and the prepositions en, au, aux, with the day of Pentecost, every man heard them speak in his own language; Quebec and New France, with Champlain's own drawing of his Habitation and the comparative (plus … que, moins … que), with Declare his glory among the heathen; and the long story of the French language, with a review of the year and Revelation 7:9, a great multitude of all nations, and kindreds, and people, and tongues. The final exam follows this unit.

12.1 La Francophonie: Countries and Prepositions

12.2 Le Québec: New France and the Comparative

12.3 L'Histoire du Français: Review of the Year

Weekly pacing calendar

WEEK	PLAN
1	• Session 1: Lesson 1.1 Bonjour: Greetings, Tu and Vous: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 1.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 1.1 activity (greeting role-plays) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet *Four sessions a week: one to learn, one to look and record, one to do, one to practice. On the fifth day, run the flashcards and read the week's verse aloud in French. The midterm comes after week 18 and the final after week 36.*
2	• Session 1: Lesson 1.2 L'Alphabet: Letters, Accents and Sounds: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 1.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 1.2 activity (épeler et lire (spell and read)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
3	• Session 1: Lesson 1.3 Les Nombres de 0 à 30: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 1.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 1.3 activity (le recensement (the census)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet • End of unit: Unit 1 review and unit challenge (l'accueil (the welcome))
4	• Session 1: Lesson 2.1 Je M'appelle: Introductions: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 2.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 2.1 activity (la carte d'identité) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
5	• Session 1: Lesson 2.2 Je Suis: The Verb Être: warm-up, story, How French works and video

WEEK	PLAN
	• Session 2: Lesson 2.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 2.2 activity (le jeu des métiers (the job game)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
6	• Session 1: Lesson 2.3 Grand ou Grande? Describing People: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 2.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 2.3 activity (portrait parlé (spoken portrait)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet • End of unit: Unit 2 review and unit challenge (mon autoportrait (my self-portrait))
7	• Session 1: Lesson 3.1 Ma Famille: Family Words: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 3.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 3.1 activity (l'album de famille) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
8	• Session 1: Lesson 3.2 J'ai: The Verb Avoir: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 3.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 3.2 activity (mime the feeling) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
9	• Session 1: Lesson 3.3 Mon, Ma, Mes: Possessive Adjectives: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 3.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 3.3 activity (à qui est-ce? (whose is it?)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet • End of unit: Unit 3 review and unit challenge (l'arbre généalogique (the family tree))
10	• Session 1: Lesson 4.1 En Classe: School Words, Articles and Plurals: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 4.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards

WEEK	PLAN
	• Session 3: Lesson 4.1 activity (étiquettes (labels)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
11	• Session 1: Lesson 4.2 Je Parle: Regular -er Verbs: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 4.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 4.2 activity (verb charades) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
12	• Session 1: Lesson 4.3 Quelle Heure Est-il? Time, Days and Months: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 4.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 4.3 activity (l'horloge (the clock)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet • End of unit: Unit 4 review and unit challenge (mon emploi du temps (my schedule))
13	• Session 1: Lesson 5.1 Le Repas: Food, Drinks and Meals: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 5.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 5.1 activity (mettre la table (set the table)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
14	• Session 1: Lesson 5.2 Du Pain et du Poisson: The Partitive: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 5.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 5.2 activity (la liste des courses (the shopping list)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
15	• Session 1: Lesson 5.3 Au Café: Prendre and Ordering Politely: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 5.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 5.3 activity (le café de la maison: rehearsal) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet

WEEK	PLAN
	• End of unit: Unit 5 review and unit challenge (le café de la maison)
16	• Session 1: Lesson 6.1 La Ville: Places and Prepositions: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 6.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 6.1 activity (le village en carton (the cardboard village)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
17	• Session 1: Lesson 6.2 Je Vais à l'Église: The Verb Aller: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 6.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 6.2 activity (le voyage (the journey)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
18	• Session 1: Lesson 6.3 Je Vais Visiter: The Near Future and Directions: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 6.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 6.3 activity (le guide (the tour guide)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet • End of unit: Unit 6 review and unit challenge (ma ville (my town)) • Midterm exam (Units 1–6)
19	• Session 1: Lesson 7.1 Le Corps: The Body and Avoir Mal: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 7.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 7.1 activity (jacques a dit (simon says)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet

WEEK	PLAN
20	• Session 1: Lesson 7.2 Les Vêtements: Clothes, Colors and Porter: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 7.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 7.2 activity (habille la poupée (dress the figure)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
21	• Session 1: Lesson 7.3 Au Magasin: Ce, Cette and Adjectives Before the Noun: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 7.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 7.3 activity (la boutique) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet • End of unit: Unit 7 review and unit challenge (le défilé de mode (the fashion show))
22	• Session 1: Lesson 8.1 Quel Temps Fait-il? The Weather: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 8.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 8.1 activity (le journal météo (the weather diary)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
23	• Session 1: Lesson 8.2 Les Quatre Saisons: Seasons and the Year: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 8.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 8.2 activity (la roue des saisons (the wheel of the seasons)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
24	• Session 1: Lesson 8.3 Je Fais du Vélo: Faire, Sports and Activities: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 8.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 8.3 activity (mon agenda (my weekly planner)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet • End of unit: Unit 8 review and unit challenge (la météo (the weather report))

WEEK	PLAN
25	• Session 1: Lesson 9.1 Je Me Lève: Reflexive Verbs and the Daily Routine: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 9.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 9.1 activity (ma routine en images (my routine in pictures)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
26	• Session 1: Lesson 9.2 La Maison: Rooms, Furniture and Chores: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 9.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 9.2 activity (le plan de la maison (the floor plan)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
27	• Session 1: Lesson 9.3 Je Veux, Je Peux, Je Dois: Modal Verbs: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 9.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 9.3 activity (le règlement de la maison (the house rules)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet • End of unit: Unit 9 review and unit challenge (une journée dans ma vie (a day in my life))
28	• Session 1: Lesson 10.1 Noël: Christmas and Regular -ir Verbs: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 10.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 10.1 activity (la crèche) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
29	• Session 1: Lesson 10.2 Pâques: Easter and Regular -re Verbs: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 10.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 10.2 activity (le chemin de pâques (the easter path)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet

WEEK	PLAN
30	• Session 1: Lesson 10.3 Je Crois: Croire, Voir and the Creed: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 10.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 10.3 activity (le credo en images (the creed in pictures)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet • End of unit: Unit 10 review and unit challenge (une fête chrétienne (a christian feast))
31	• Session 1: Lesson 11.1 J'ai Parlé: The Passé Composé with Avoir: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 11.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 11.1 activity (le journal intime (the diary)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
32	• Session 1: Lesson 11.2 J'ai Vu, J'ai Fait: Irregular Past Participles: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 11.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 11.2 activity (le témoin (the eyewitness)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
33	• Session 1: Lesson 11.3 Je Suis Venu: The Passé Composé with Être: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 11.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 11.3 activity (mon voyage (my journey)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet • End of unit: Unit 11 review and unit challenge (la tapisserie (the tapestry))
34	• Session 1: Lesson 12.1 La Francophonie: Countries and Prepositions: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 12.1 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 12.1 activity (la carte de la francophonie (the map of the french-speaking world)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet

WEEK	PLAN
35	• Session 1: Lesson 12.2 Le Québec: New France and the Comparative: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 12.2 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 12.2 activity (visite de québec (a tour of quebec)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet
36	• Session 1: Lesson 12.3 L'Histoire du Français: Review of the Year: warm-up, story, How French works and video • Session 2: Lesson 12.3 picture study or backup video, key terms, French notebook and flashcards • Session 3: Lesson 12.3 activity (ma ligne du temps (my timeline)) • Session 4: Worked examples, practice, game and worksheet • End of unit: Unit 12 review and unit challenge (exposé: un pays francophone) • Final exam (cumulative)

Materials

French notebook (any notebook)

One for the year: charts, verses, worked examples and activities.

Index cards (about 400) and a box or binder rings

For the flashcard deck that grows every lesson.

A Louis Segond 1910 Bible (print, or free online)

Bible Gateway lists it as Louis Segond (LSG). Used in every lesson.

A world map or atlas

For the French-speaking world in Units 6 and 12.

Paper plates, sticky notes, markers and household things

For the clock, the labels, the café, the shop and the other activities.

A device to play the videos

Each lesson has a main video and a backup.

Grading

Grades come from steady daily work and from honest tests: a language is learned by repetition, and a student who speaks French out loud daily, keeps the flashcard deck

and the notebook, and corrects his or her own practice will do well on the tests.

PART	%
Daily speaking, flashcards and recitation	**20**
French notebook, worksheets and practice (corrected with the keys)	**20**
Unit tests (12)	**25**
Unit challenges (12)	**10**
Midterm exam	**10**
Final exam	**15**

Scale: A 90–100, B 80–89, C 70–79, D 60–69. Below 60 on a unit test: review the unit's charts and practice, then retake the test.

- A verb counts when it is in the right person and tense and spelled correctly, accents included.
- Oral questions are graded on being understood: a French speaker should be able to understand the answer. Accent and speed come with time.
- For a student who writes slowly, unit tests may be done orally with the parent writing down the answers.

A note to parents

You do not need to know French to teach this course. Every example has its translation, every practice question and test has its answer in a separate key, and every lesson has videos with native or fluent speakers. Your job is to listen to the oral work, ask the oral test questions, and check the written work against the keys.

This course teaches standard French as spoken in France, with notes on Quebec, Belgian and Swiss usage where they differ. The Louis Segond Bible uses the tu forms

in prayer to God and between friends; the lessons point this out so that it never confuses the student.

The stories are drawn from Scripture and from the history of the French-speaking world, told simply and honestly. The picture studies are public-domain paintings, drawings and engravings, most from major museums. Parents should preview the videos and stay nearby.

PRINTABLE WORD LIST

Vocabulary for the course

Standard French. Standard French as taught in France and understood everywhere, with Quebec differences noted. Most final consonants are silent except c, r, f and l (the CaReFuL letters); on, an and in are nasal vowels, hummed through the nose; French leans lightly on the last sounded syllable of a word, shown here in capitals. In the respellings, zh is the s in measure, ü is French u (say ee with rounded lips), uh is the soft e of le, and r is the French r, made in the back of the throat.

Every week's list is printed again inside that lesson. Say the capital letters loudest.

1.1 BONJOUR: GREETINGS, TU AND VOUS

bonjour
bohn-ZHOOR
greeting
hello; good morning, good day

bonsoir
bohn-SWAHR
greeting
good evening

salut
sah-LÜ
greeting
hi; bye (familiar)

au revoir
oh ruh-VWAHR
phrase
goodbye

à bientôt
ah byan-TOH
phrase
see you soon

Madame / Monsieur
mah-DAHM / muh-SYUH
title
Mrs., ma'am / Mr., sir

Comment allez-vous?

koh-mahn tah-lay-VOO

question

How are you? (formal)

Ça va?

sah VAH

question

How's it going?

s'il vous plaît

seel voo PLEH

phrase

please (formal)

merci

mehr-SEE

phrase

thank you

je vous en prie

zhuh voo zahn PREE

phrase

you are welcome (formal)

pardon

par-DOHN

phrase

excuse me; sorry

1.2 L'ALPHABET: LETTERS, ACCENTS AND SOUNDS

la lettre

lah LEHTR

la · writing

letter

le mot

luh MOH

le · writing

word

la voyelle

lah vwah-YEL

la · writing

vowel

l'accent

lak-SAHN

le · writing

accent mark

épeler

ay-puh-LAY

verb

to spell

lire

LEER

verb

to read

écrire
ay-KREER
verb
to write

la langue
lah LAHNG
la · language
language; tongue

le français
luh frahn-SEH
le · language
French (language)

la Parole
lah pah-ROHL
la · faith
the Word

Dieu
DYUH
faith
God

le commencement
luh koh-mahns-MAHN
le · time
beginning

1.3 LES NOMBRES DE 0 À 30

un, deux, trois
UN, DUH, TRWAH
number
one, two, three

quatre, cinq, six
KAHTR, SANK, SEES
number
four, five, six

sept, huit, neuf, dix
SET, WEET, NUHF, DEES
number
seven, eight, nine, ten

onze, douze, treize
OHNZ, DOOZ, TREHZ
number
eleven, twelve, thirteen

quatorze, quinze, seize
kah-TORZ, KANZ, SEHZ
number
fourteen, fifteen, sixteen

vingt
VAN
number
twenty

trente

TRAHNT

number

thirty

combien (de)

kohn-BYAN

question

how many, how much

il y a

eel-ee-AH

phrase

there is, there are

l’âge

LAHZH

le · life

age

l’an / l’année

LAHN / lah-NAY

le / la · time

year

le jour

luh ZHOOR

le · time

day

2.1 JE M’APPELLE: INTRODUCTIONS

s’appeler

sah-puh-LAY

verb

to be called

je m’appelle

zhuh mah-PEL

phrase

my name is

le nom

luh NOHN

le · identity

name; last name

le prénom

luh pray-NOHN

le · identity

first name

habiter

ah-bee-TAY

verb

to live (in)

la ville

lah VEEL

la · places

city, town

venir de

vuh-NEER duh

verb

to come from

où

OO

question

where

d'où

DOO

question

from where

présenter

pray-zahn-TAY

verb

to introduce

enchanté(e)

ahn-shahn-TAY

adjective

pleased to meet you

l'ami / l'amie

lah-MEE

le / la · people

friend

2.2 JE SUIS: THE VERB ÊTRE

je, tu, il, elle

zhuh, tü, eel, el

pronoun

I, you, he/it, she/it

on

OHN

pronoun

one, people; we (informal)

nous, vous

noo, voo

pronoun

we, you (formal or plural)

ils, elles

eel, el

pronoun

they (masc./mixed, fem.)

être

EHTR

verb

to be

le professeur

luh proh-feh-SUHR

le · work

teacher

le médecin
luh mayd-SAN
le · work
doctor

l'élève
lay-LEV
le / la · school
pupil

fatigué(e)
fah-tee-GAY
adjective
tired

content(e)
kohn-TAHN
adjective
happy, pleased

en retard
ahn ruh-TAR
phrase
late

l'Éternel
lay-tehr-NEL
faith
the LORD (the Eternal)

2.3 GRAND OU GRANDE? DESCRIBING PEOPLE

grand(e)
GRAHN / GRAHND
adjective
tall, big

petit(e)
puh-TEE / puh-TEET
adjective
small, short

jeune
ZHUHN
adjective
young

vieux / vieille
VYUH / VYAY
adjective
old

beau / belle
BOH / BEL
adjective
beautiful, handsome

gentil(le)
zhahn-TEE / zhahn-TEEY
adjective
kind, nice

heureux / heureuse

uh-RUH / uh-RUHZ

adjective

happy

intelligent(e)

an-teh-lee-ZHAHN(T)

adjective

intelligent

français(e)

frahn-SEH / frahn-SEZ

adjective

French

américain(e)

ah-may-ree-KAN / ah-may-ree-KEN

adjective

American

l'homme / la femme

LOHM / lah FAHM

le / la · people

man / woman

le peintre

luh PANTR

le · work

painter

3.1 MA FAMILLE: FAMILY WORDS

la famille

lah fah-MEEY

la · family

family

le père / la mère

luh PEHR / lah MEHR

le / la · family

father / mother

le fils / la fille

luh FEES / lah FEEY

le / la · family

son / daughter

le frère / la sœur

luh FREHR / lah SUHR

le / la · family

brother / sister

le mari / la femme

luh mah-REE / lah FAHM

le / la · family

husband / wife

les grands-parents

lay grahn-pah-RAHN

les · family

grandparents

l’oncle / la tante

LOHNKL / lah TAHNT

le / la · family

uncle / aunt

le cousin / la cousine

luh koo-ZAN / lah koo-ZEEN

le / la · family

cousin

les petits-enfants

lay puh-tee-zahn-FAHN

les · family

grandchildren

le neveu / la nièce

luh nuh-VUH / lah NYES

le / la · family

nephew / niece

fils unique

fees ü-NEEK

phrase

only son (fille unique: only daughter)

honorer

oh-noh-RAY

verb

to honor

3.2 J’AI: THE VERB AVOIR

avoir

ah-VWAHR

verb

to have

avoir faim

ah-vwahr FAN

phrase

to be hungry

avoir soif

ah-vwahr SWAHF

phrase

to be thirsty

avoir chaud / froid

ah-vwahr SHOH / FRWAH

phrase

to be hot / cold

avoir peur (de)

ah-vwahr PUHR

phrase

to be afraid (of)

avoir raison / tort

ah-vwahr reh-ZOHN / TOR

phrase

to be right / wrong

avoir sommeil
ah-vwahr soh-MEY
phrase
to be sleepy

avoir besoin de
ah-vwahr buh-ZWAN duh
phrase
to need

avoir envie de
ah-vwahr ahn-VEE duh
phrase
to feel like

avoir mal à
ah-vwahr MAHL ah
phrase
to hurt (in a body part)

la vie
lah VEE
la · faith
life

le Fils
luh FEES
le · faith
the Son

3.3 MON, MA, MES: POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

mon, ma, mes
MOHN, MAH, MAY
possessive
my

ton, ta, tes
TOHN, TAH, TAY
possessive
your (familiar)

son, sa, ses
SOHN, SAH, SAY
possessive
his, her, its

notre, nos
NOHTR, NOH
possessive
our

votre, vos
VOHTR, VOH
possessive
your (formal / plural)

leur, leurs
LUHR
possessive
their

le peuple

luh PUHPL

le · people

a people, nation

la belle-mère

lah bel-MEHR

la · family

mother-in-law, stepmother

la veuve

lah VUHV

la · family

widow

aimer

eh-MAY

verb

to love, to like

la clé

lah KLAY

la · home

key

à qui

ah KEE

question

whose, to whom

4.1 EN CLASSE: SCHOOL WORDS, ARTICLES AND PLURALS

le livre

luh LEEVR

le · school

book

le cahier

luh kah-YAY

le · school

notebook

le crayon

luh kreh-YOHN

le · school

pencil

le stylo

luh stee-LOH

le · school

pen

la gomme

lah GUM

la · school

eraser

la règle

lah REHGL

la · school

ruler

le bureau
luh bew-ROH
le · school
desk

le tableau
luh tah-BLOH
le · school
board; painting

l’ordinateur
lor-dee-nah-TUHR
le · school
computer

l’élève
lay-LEHV
le / la · school
student, pupil

l’histoire
lees-TWAHR
la · school
history; story

la crainte
lah KRANT
la · faith
fear, reverence

4.2 JE PARLE: REGULAR -ER VERBS

parler
par-LAY
verb
to speak

aimer
eh-MAY
verb
to love, to like

chanter
shahn-TAY
verb
to sing

écouter
ay-koo-TAY
verb
to listen (to)

regarder
ruh-gar-DAY
verb
to watch, look at

travailler
trah-vah-YAY
verb
to work

étudier
ay-tew-DYAY
verb
to study

jouer
zhoo-AY
verb
to play

habiter
ah-bee-TAY
verb
to live (somewhere)

prier
pree-AY
verb
to pray

chercher
shehr-SHAY
verb
to look for

aider
eh-DAY
verb
to help

4.3 QUELLE HEURE EST-IL? TIME, DAYS AND MONTHS

l’heure
LUHR
la · time
hour, time

et quart
ay KAHR
phrase
quarter past

et demie
ay duh-MEE
phrase
half past

moins le quart
mwan luh KAHR
phrase
quarter to

midi
mee-DEE
le · time
noon

minuit
mee-NWEE
le · time
midnight

le jour
luh ZHOOR
le · time
day

la semaine
lah suh-MEN
la · time
week

le mois
luh MWAH
le · time
month

dimanche
dee-MAHNSH
le · time
Sunday

le soir / le matin
luh SWAHR / luh mah-TAN
le · time
evening / morning

l'année
lah-NAY
la · time
year

5.1 LE REPAS: FOOD, DRINKS AND MEALS

le pain
luh PAN
le · food
bread

le fromage
luh froh-MAHZH
le · food
cheese

la viande
lah VYAHND
la · food
meat

le poisson
luh pwah-SOHN
le · food
fish

l'œuf
LUHF
le · food
egg

la pomme
lah PUM
la · food
apple

les légumes

lay lay-GEWM

les · food

vegetables

l'eau

LOH

la · food

water

le lait

luh LEH

le · food

milk

l'assiette

lah-SYET

la · table

plate

la fourchette

lah foor-SHET

la · table

fork

manger

mahn-ZHAY

verb

to eat

5.2 DU PAIN ET DU POISSON: THE PARTITIVE

du, de la, de l', des

dew, duh lah, duhl, day

article

some, any

boire

BWAHR

verb

to drink

beaucoup de

boh-KOO duh

quantity

a lot of

un peu de

uhn PUH duh

quantity

a little

assez de

ah-SAY duh

quantity

enough

trop de

TROH duh

quantity

too much, too many

un verre de

uhn VEHR duh

quantity

a glass of

une bouteille de

ewn boo-TEY duh

quantity

a bottle of

le sucre

luh SEWKR

le · food

sugar

le beurre

luh BUHR

le · food

butter

la confiture

lah kohn-fee-TEWR

la · food

jam

acheter

ahsh-TAY

verb

to buy

5.3 AU CAFÉ: PRENDRE AND ORDERING POLITELY

prendre

PRAHNDR

verb

to take, to have (food)

apprendre

ah-PRAHNDR

verb

to learn

comprendre

kohm-PRAHNDR

verb

to understand

je voudrais

zhuh voo-DREH

phrase

I would like

la carte

lah KART

la · café

menu

l'entrée

lahn-TRAY

la · café

starter

le plat principal

luh PLAH pran-see-PAHL

le · café

main course

le serveur

luh sehr-VUHR

le · café

waiter (la serveuse: waitress)

l'addition

lah-dee-SYOHN

la · café

the bill

l'euro

luh-ROH

le · money

euro

combien

kohm-BYAN

question

how much, how many

la porte

lah PORT

la · home

door

6.1 LA VILLE: PLACES AND PREPOSITIONS

l'église

lay-GLEEZ

la · town

church

la mairie

lah meh-REE

la · town

town hall

la gare

lah GAHR

la · town

train station

la poste

lah POST

la · town

post office

la bibliothèque

lah bee-blee-oh-TEK

la · town

library

la boulangerie

lah boo-lahnzh-REE

la · town

bakery

la place

lah PLAHS

la · town

square

la rue

lah REW

la · town

street

devant / derrière

duh-VAHN / deh-RYEHR

preposition

in front of / behind

à côté de

ah koh-TAY duh

preposition

next to

en face de

ahn FAHS duh

preposition

across from

la lumière

lah lew-MYEHR

la · faith

light

6.2 JE VAIS À L'ÉGLISE: THE VERB ALLER

aller

ah-LAY

verb

to go

au / aux

OH

preposition

to the, at the

chez

SHAY

preposition

at the house of

à pied

ah PYAY

phrase

on foot

à vélo

ah vay-LOH

phrase

by bike

en voiture

ahn vwah-TEWR

phrase

by car

en train
ahn TRAN
phrase
by train

en avion
ahn-nah-VYOHN
phrase
by plane

où
OO
question
where

la joie
lah ZHWAH
la · faith
joy

la maison
lah meh-ZOHN
la · home
house, home

le voyage
luh vwah-YAHZH
le · travel
journey, trip

6.3 JE VAIS VISITER: THE NEAR FUTURE AND DIRECTIONS

demain
duh-MAN
adverb
tomorrow

ce soir
suh SWAHR
phrase
tonight

prochain(e)
proh-SHAN / proh-SHEN
adjective
next

tout droit
too DRWAH
phrase
straight ahead

à gauche
ah GOHSH
phrase
to the left

à droite
ah DRWAHT
phrase
to the right

tourner
toor-NAY
verb
to turn

traverser
trah-vehr-SAY
verb
to cross

le pont
luh POHN
le · town
bridge

préparer
pray-pah-RAY
verb
to prepare

la demeure
lah duh-MUHR
la · faith
dwelling place, mansion

visiter
vee-zee-TAY
verb
to visit (a place)

7.1 LE CORPS: THE BODY AND AVOIR MAL

la tête
lah TET
la · body
head

les yeux
lay-ZYUH
les · body
eyes

la bouche
lah BOOSH
la · body
mouth

le nez
luh NAY
le · body
nose

l'oreille
loh-REY
la · body
ear

la main
lah MAN
la · body
hand

le bras
luh BRAH
le · body
arm

la jambe
lah ZHAHMB
la · body
leg

le pied
luh PYAY
le · body
foot

le dos
luh DOH
le · body
back

le médecin
luh mayd-SAN
le · health
doctor

malade
mah-LAHD
adjective
sick

7.2 LES VÊTEMENTS: CLOTHES, COLORS AND PORTER

la chemise
lah shuh-MEEZ
la · clothes
shirt

le pantalon
luh pahn-tah-LOHN
le · clothes
trousers

la robe
lah ROHB
la · clothes
dress

la jupe
lah ZHEWP
la · clothes
skirt

le manteau
luh mahn-TOH
le · clothes
coat

le pull
luh PEWL
le · clothes
sweater

les chaussures

lay shoh-SEWR

les · clothes

shoes

le chapeau

luh shah-POH

le · clothes

hat

le parapluie

luh pah-rah-PLWEE

le · clothes

umbrella

porter

por-TAY

verb

to wear, to carry

blanc / blanche

BLAHN / BLAHNSH

adjective

white

marron

mah-ROHN

adjective

brown (invariable)

7.3 AU MAGASIN: CE, CETTE AND ADJECTIVES BEFORE THE NOUN

ce, cet, cette, ces

SUH, SET, SET, SAY

demonstrative

this, that, these, those

beau / belle

BOH / BEL

adjective

beautiful, handsome

nouveau / nouvelle

noo-VOH / noo-VEL

adjective

new

vieux / vieille

VYUH / VYEY

adjective

old

bon / bonne

BOHN / BUN

adjective

good

la taille

lah TIGH

la · shop

size

essayer

eh-seh-YAY

verb

to try (on)

coûter

koo-TAY

verb

to cost

cher / chère

SHEHR

adjective

expensive; dear

chercher

shehr-SHAY

verb

to look for

la force

lah FORS

la · faith

strength

la gloire

lah GLWAHR

la · faith

glory, honour

8.1 QUEL TEMPS FAIT-IL? THE WEATHER

le temps

luh TAHN

le · weather

weather

il fait beau

eel feh BOH

phrase

it is nice out

il fait chaud

eel feh SHOH

phrase

it is hot

il fait froid

eel feh FRWAH

phrase

it is cold

il pleut

eel PLUH

phrase

it is raining

il neige

eel NEHZH

phrase

it is snowing

le soleil
luh soh-LEY
le · weather
sun

le vent
luh VAHN
le · weather
wind

le nuage
luh new-AHZH
le · weather
cloud

la pluie
lah PLWEE
la · weather
rain

l'orage
loh-RAHZH
le · weather
storm

le degré
luh duh-GRAY
le · weather
degree

8.2 LES QUATRE SAISONS: SEASONS AND THE YEAR

le printemps
luh pran-TAHN
le · season
spring

l'été
lay-TAY
le · season
summer

l'automne
loh-TUN
le · season
autumn

l'hiver
lee-VEHR
le · season
winter

la saison
lah seh-ZOHN
la · season
season

la fleur
lah FLUHR
la · nature
flower

la feuille

lah FUHY

la · nature

leaf

l'arbre

LAHRBR

le · nature

tree

la neige

lah NEHZH

la · weather

snow

les vacances

lay vah-KAHNS

les · season

holidays, vacation

l'anniversaire

lah-nee-vehr-SEHR

le · season

birthday

la moisson

lah mwah-SOHN

la · faith

harvest

8.3 JE FAIS DU VÉLO: FAIRE, SPORTS AND ACTIVITIES

faire

FEHR

verb

to do, to make

faire du vélo

fehr dew vay-LOH

phrase

to go cycling

faire de la natation

fehr duh lah nah-tah-SYOHN

phrase

to swim (as a sport)

faire de la randonnée

fehr duh lah rahn-doh-NAY

phrase

to go hiking

faire la cuisine

fehr lah kwee-ZEEN

phrase

to cook

faire les courses

fehr lay KOORS

phrase

to do the shopping

les devoirs

lay duh-VWAHR

les · school

homework

jouer au foot

zhoo-ay oh FOOT

phrase

to play soccer

jouer du piano

zhoo-ay dew pyah-NOH

phrase

to play the piano

les échecs

lay-zay-SHEK

les · games

chess

l’œuvre

LUHVR

la · faith

work, deed

le nom

luh NOHN

le · faith

name

9.1 JE ME LÈVE: REFLEXIVE VERBS AND THE DAILY ROUTINE

se réveiller

suh ray-veh-YAY

verb

to wake up

se lever

suh luh-VAY

verb

to get up

se laver

suh lah-VAY

verb

to wash (oneself)

se doucher

suh doo-SHAY

verb

to shower

s’habiller

sah-bee-YAY

verb

to get dressed

se brosser les dents

suh broh-say lay DAHN

verb

to brush one’s teeth

se dépêcher

suh day-peh-SHAY

verb

to hurry

se reposer

suh ruh-poh-ZAY

verb

to rest

se coucher

suh koo-SHAY

verb

to go to bed

tôt / tard

TOH / TAHR

adverb

early / late

sombre

SOHMBR

adjective

dark

le lieu

luh LYUH

le · place

place

9.2 LA MAISON: ROOMS, FURNITURE AND CHORES

la cuisine

lah kwee-ZEEN

la · house

kitchen

la chambre

lah SHAHMBR

la · house

bedroom

la salle de bains

lah sahl duh BAN

la · house

bathroom

le salon

luh sah-LOHN

le · house

living room

le jardin

luh zhar-DAN

le · house

garden, yard

le lit

luh LEE

le · house

bed

le canapé

luh kah-nah-PAY

le · house

sofa

la fenêtre

lah fuh-NETR

la · house

window

faire la vaisselle

fehr lah veh-SEL

phrase

to do the dishes

mettre la table

metr lah TAHBL

phrase

to set the table

ranger

rahn-ZHAY

verb

to tidy

la sagesse

lah sah-ZHES

la · faith

wisdom

9.3 JE VEUX, JE PEUX, JE DOIS: MODAL VERBS

vouloir

voo-LWAHR

verb

to want

pouvoir

poo-VWAHR

verb

to be able to, can

devoir

duh-VWAHR

verb

to have to, must; to owe

je veux

zhuh VUH

verb form

I want

je peux

zhuh PUH

verb form

I can, I may

je dois

zhuh DWAH

verb form

I must

sortir
sor-TEER
verb
to go out

partir
par-TEER
verb
to leave

mentir
mahn-TEER
verb
to lie

d'abord
dah-BOR
adverb
first

possible
poh-SEEBL
adjective
possible

la volonté
lah voh-lohn-TAY
la · faith
will

10.1 NOËL: CHRISTMAS AND REGULAR -IR VERBS

Noël
noh-EL
le · feast
Christmas

l'Avent
lah-VAHN
le · feast
Advent

la crèche
lah KRESH
la · feast
manger, Nativity scene

l'ange
LAHNZH
le · feast
angel

le berger
luh behr-ZHAY
le · feast
shepherd

l'étoile
lay-TWAHL
la · feast
star

le cadeau
luh kah-DOH
le · feast
gift

le sapin
luh sah-PAN
le · feast
fir tree, Christmas tree

finir
fee-NEER
verb
to finish

choisir
shwah-ZEER
verb
to choose

obéir à
oh-bay-EER ah
verb
to obey

bénir
bay-NEER
verb
to bless

10.2 PÂQUES: EASTER AND REGULAR -RE VERBS

Pâques
PAHK
les · feast
Easter

la Semaine sainte
lah suh-men SANT
la · feast
Holy Week

le Vendredi saint
luh vahn-druh-dee SAN
le · feast
Good Friday

la croix
lah KRWAH
la · faith
cross

le tombeau
luh tohm-BOH
le · faith
tomb

ressuscité
ray-sew-see-TAY
adjective
risen

la cloche

lah KLOSH

la · feast

bell

l’agneau

lah-NYOH

le · faith

lamb

attendre

ah-TAHNDR

verb

to wait for

entendre

ahn-TAHNDR

verb

to hear

répondre

ray-POHNDR

verb

to answer

vendre

VAHNDR

verb

to sell

10.3 JE CROIS: CROIRE, VOIR AND THE CREED

croire

KRWAHR

verb

to believe

voir

VWAHR

verb

to see

je crois

zhuh KRWAH

verb form

I believe

nous croyons

noo krwah-YOHN

verb form

we believe

tout-puissant

too-pwee-SAHN

adjective

almighty

le Créateur

luh kray-ah-TUHR

le · faith

the Creator

le ciel

luh SYEL

le · faith

heaven, sky

la terre

lah TEHR

la · faith

earth

le Seigneur

luh seh-NYUHR

le · faith

the Lord

la résurrection

lah ray-zew-rek-SYOHN

la · faith

resurrection

le Credo

luh kray-DOH

le · faith

the Creed

vide

VEED

adjective

empty

11.1 J'AI PARLÉ: THE PASSÉ COMPOSÉ WITH AVOIR

le passé composé

luh pah-SAY kohm-poh-ZAY

le · grammar

the compound past

le participe passé

luh par-tee-SEEP pah-SAY

le · grammar

past participle

hier

YEHR

adverb

yesterday

hier soir

yehr SWAHR

phrase

last night

avant-hier

ah-vahn-TYEHR

adverb

the day before yesterday

dernier / dernière

dehr-NYAY / dehr-NYEHR

adjective

last

il y a (+ time)

eel-yah

phrase

ago

déjà

day-ZHAH

adverb

already

ne … jamais

nuh … zhah-MEH

negative

never

achever

ahsh-VAY

verb

to finish, complete

garder

gar-DAY

verb

to keep

la course

lah KOORS

la · faith

race, course

11.2 J'AI VU, J'AI FAIT: IRREGULAR PAST PARTICIPLES

eu

EW

participle

had (avoir)

été

ay-TAY

participle

been (être)

fait

FEH

participle

done, made (faire)

vu

VEW

participle

seen (voir)

pris

PREE

participle

taken (prendre)

mis

MEE

participle

put (mettre)

dit

DEE

participle

said (dire)

écrit

ay-KREE

participle

written (écrire)

lu

LEW

participle

read (lire)

bu

BEW

participle

drunk (boire)

le témoin

luh tay-MWAN

le · faith

witness

toucher

too-SHAY

verb

to touch

11.3 JE SUIS VENU: THE PASSÉ COMPOSÉ WITH ÊTRE

venir

vuh-NEER

verb

to come

arriver

ah-ree-VAY

verb

to arrive

entrer

ahn-TRAY

verb

to enter

monter

mohn-TAY

verb

to go up

descendre

deh-SAHNDR

verb

to go down

tomber

tohm-BAY

verb

to fall

rester

res-TAY

verb

to stay

naître

NETR

verb

to be born

mourir

moo-REER

verb

to die

rentrer

rahn-TRAY

verb

to come home

le serment

luh sehr-MAHN

le · history

oath

recevoir

ruh-suh-VWAHR

verb

to receive

12.1 LA FRANCOPHONIE: COUNTRIES AND PREPOSITIONS

la francophonie

lah frahn-koh-foh-NEE

la · world

the French-speaking world

francophone

frahn-koh-FUN

adjective

French-speaking

le pays

luh pay-EE

le · world

country

la Belgique

lah bel-ZHEEK

la · world

Belgium

la Suisse

lah SWEES

la · world

Switzerland

le Sénégal

luh say-nay-GAHL

le · world

Senegal

les États-Unis

lay-zay-tah-zew-NEE

les · world

the United States

belge

BELZH

adjective

Belgian

suisse

SWEES

adjective

Swiss

la langue

lah LAHNG

la · world

language; tongue

la capitale

lah kah-pee-TAHL

la · world

capital city

le monde

luh MOHND

le · world

world

12.2 LE QUÉBEC: NEW FRANCE AND THE COMPARATIVE

la Nouvelle-France

lah noo-vel FRAHNS

la · history

New France

le fleuve

luh FLUHV

le · world

great river

plus ... que

PLEW ... kuh

comparative

more ... than

moins ... que

MWAN ... kuh

comparative

less ... than

aussi ... que

oh-SEE ... kuh

comparative

as ... as

meilleur(e)

meh-YUHR

adjective

better

mieux

MYUH

adverb

better

le colombier

luh koh-lohm-BYAY

le · history

dovecote

le souper

luh soo-PAY

le · Quebec

dinner (Quebec)

magasiner

mah-gah-zee-NAY

verb

to shop (Quebec)

se souvenir

suh soov-NEER

verb

to remember

les merveilles

lay mehr-VEY

les · faith

wonders

12.3 L'HISTOIRE DU FRANÇAIS: REVIEW OF THE YEAR

le latin

luh lah-TAN

le · language

Latin

l'ancien français

lahn-syan frahn-SEH

le · language

Old French

l'accent

lak-SAHN

le · language

accent

la foule

lah FOOL

la · faith

crowd, multitude

le trône

luh TROHN

le · faith

throne

la tribu

lah tree-BEW

la · faith

tribe

la palme
lah PAHLM
la · faith
palm branch

fonder
fohn-DAY
verb
to found

traduire
trah-DWEER
verb
to translate

le siècle
luh SYEKL
le · history
century

compter
kohn-TAY
verb
to count

au revoir
oh ruh-VWAHR
phrase
goodbye

UNIT 1

Bonjour! Saluer et Prononcer

Lesson 1.1 opens the year with greetings and courtesy: bonjour, bonsoir, salut, au revoir, comment allez-vous?, s'il vous plaît, merci, and the choice every French speaker makes many times a day between tu (familiar) and vous (respectful or plural). Courbet's painting of a meeting on a country road shows three men greeting with hats in hand, and Luke 1:28 gives the angel Gabriel's greeting to Mary.

Lesson 1.2 lays the foundation of sound: the 26 letters and their French names, the five accent marks (é, è, ê, ç, ë), silent final letters, the nasal vowels and the French r, with John 1:1 as the first verse read aloud in French. Lesson 1.3 counts from zéro to trente, asks Combien? and Quel âge as-tu?, and reads Genesis 1:5: ce fut le premier jour.

PREREQUISITES

- None. French I assumes no French. Students who finished the School Launch Grade 5–8 French courses will know much of Units 1–6 and can move through them faster, spending the saved weeks on reading.

MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can greet and take leave politely at any time of day, and choose tu or vous correctly.
- ☐ I can say the French alphabet and spell my name aloud.
- ☐ I can read French words aloud with silent final letters, nasal vowels and accent marks.
- ☐ I can count from 0 to 30 and ask and answer Combien? and Quel âge as-tu?
- ☐ I can read Luke 1:28 and John 1:1 aloud in the Louis Segond Bible.

OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **A Louis Segond 1910 Bible (print, or free online)**: Bible Gateway lists it as Louis Segond (LSG). Used all year.
- **Index cards and a box**: For the flashcard deck that grows every lesson.

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

LESSONS IN THIS UNIT

1.1	**Bonjour: Greetings, Tu and Vous**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
1.2	**L'Alphabet: Letters, Accents and Sounds**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
1.3	**Les Nombres de 0 à 30**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

Unit 1 test

Unit 1 test. Questions 1–3 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written. 50 points.

1. 5 pts

   Oral: Greet the parent as you would at 9 a.m. and at 8 p.m., ask how he or she is (vous), and take leave.

2. 5 pts

   Oral: Spell your full name aloud with French letter names.

3. 5 pts

   Oral: Read John 1:1 aloud: Au commencement était la Parole, et la Parole était avec Dieu, et la Parole était Dieu.

4. 5 pts

   Tu or vous with: (a) your little sister, (b) the pastor, (c) a shopkeeper you have never met, (d) your best friend, (e) two friends together?

5. 5 pts

   Write in French: Good morning, Madame Dubois. How are you? Very well, thank you. And you?

6. 5 pts

   Name the five French accent marks and give a word with each.

7. 5 pts

   Which letters are silent? petit, grand, Paris, beaucoup, avec.

8. 5 pts

   Write in French words: 7, 12, 16, 21, 30.

9. 5 pts

   Answer in French: Quel âge as-tu? Combien de jours y a-t-il en avril?

10. **5 pts**

Copy Luke 1:28 from Je te salue to the end, and translate it.

ANSWER KEY

1. Bonjour, Madame/Monsieur. Comment allez-vous? … Bonsoir … Au revoir (À bientôt).
2. Each letter named the French way (a, bé, cé, dé, e, effe, gé, ache, i, ji, ka …).
3. Silent final letters (était, et), nasal en/an in commencement, French r in Parole; graded on steady, clear reading.
4. (a) tu, (b) vous, (c) vous, (d) tu, (e) vous (plural).
5. Bonjour, Madame Dubois. Comment allez-vous? Très bien, merci. Et vous?
6. Accent aigu (é: été), accent grave (è, à: père, là), accent circonflexe (ê: fête), cédille (ç: français), tréma (ë, ï: Noël, naïf).
7. petit (t), grand (d), Paris (s), beaucoup (p); avec: none (final c is sounded).
8. sept, douze, seize, vingt et un, trente.
9. J'ai ___ ans. Il y a trente jours en avril.
10. Je te salue, toi à qui une grâce a été faite; le Seigneur est avec toi. Hail, thou that art highly favoured, the Lord is with thee.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

UNIT CHALLENGE: L'ACCUEIL (THE WELCOME)

Welcome a guest (a parent playing a visitor, a grandparent, or a French-speaking neighbor) in French from the door to the table: greet with the right time of day and vous, introduce yourself and spell your name, offer a seat (Asseyez-vous, je vous en prie), ask how many are in the family (Combien de personnes y a-t-il dans votre famille?), and take leave politely. Then read John 1:1 aloud for your guest. Keep a one-page script in your notebook and record the welcome if you can.

LOOK FOR	WHAT IT MEANS
Courtesy	Greetings, s'il vous plaît, merci, je vous en prie and leave-taking are used naturally.
Tu and vous	Vous forms are used consistently with the guest.
Sounds	Silent final letters, nasal vowels and the French r are attempted carefully.
Numbers	Asks and answers a combien question correctly.

UNIT 1 · BONJOUR! SALUER ET PRONONCER · LESSON 1.1 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

1.1 Bonjour: Greetings, Tu and Vous

OBJECTIVES

- Greet and take leave at any time of day: bonjour, bonsoir, salut, au revoir, à bientôt, bonne nuit.
- Ask and answer Comment allez-vous? / Comment vas-tu? / Ça va? and use s'il vous plaît, merci, je vous en prie and pardon.
- Choose between tu and vous and explain the choice.
- Describe Courbet's Bonjour Monsieur Courbet and what it shows about courtesy.

> **Warm-up.** How do you greet your grandparents? Your best friend? The pastor? Do you use the same words for all three? English once had two words for you, thou for family and friends and you for respect; the King James Bible still uses both. French still does. Today you learn when to use each.

WATCH

TU or VOUS? How to say "YOU" in French.

Learn French With Alexa · 4:40

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=4CeCEUd53RI

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How French works paragraphs. Pause after each example and say it back.

Note: Learn French With Alexa explains when to say tu and when to say vous, under five minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

French Greetings (French Essentials Lesson 1)

Learn French With Alexa · 9:54

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=hd0_GZHHWeE

Session 2 or 3: a fuller lesson on French greetings for review.

KEY TERMS

bonjour / bonsoir
Good morning, good day / good evening (bohn-ZHOOR / bohn-SWAHR).

salut
Hi, bye: only with friends and family (sah-LÜ).

tu / vous
You: tu for one friend, child or family member; vous for respect or for more than one person.

s'il vous plaît / s'il te plaît
Please (formal / familiar).

je vous en prie / de rien
You are welcome (formal / familiar).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

bonjour
bohn-ZHOOR
greeting
hello; good morning, good day

bonsoir
bohn-SWAHR
greeting
good evening

salut
sah-LÜ
greeting
hi; bye (familiar)

au revoir
oh ruh-VWAHR
phrase
goodbye

à bientôt
ah byan-TOH
phrase
see you soon

Madame / Monsieur
mah-DAHM / muh-SYUH
title
Mrs., ma'am / Mr., sir

Comment allez-vous?
koh-mahn tah-lay-VOO
question
How are you? (formal)

Ça va?
sah VAH
question
How's it going?

s'il vous plaît
seel voo PLEH
phrase
please (formal)

merci
mehr-SEE
phrase
thank you

je vous en prie
zhuh voo zahn PREE
phrase
you are welcome (formal)

pardon
par-DOHN
phrase
excuse me; sorry

CORE IDEAS

The story. In May 1854 the painter Gustave Courbet stepped off the coach near Montpellier, in the south of France, with his painter's pack on his back and a stick in his hand. His friend and patron Alfred Bruyas came out along the road to meet him with his servant, and Courbet painted the meeting: three men on a dusty road, each

with his hat in his hand. Parisian critics laughed and called it Bonjour Monsieur Courbet, and the name stuck. It shows something French people still care about: a proper greeting.

How French works: greetings. Say **bonjour** (good day) from morning until late afternoon, and **bonsoir** (good evening) after that; **bonne nuit** is only for bedtime. Add the title: **Bonjour, Madame. Bonjour, Monsieur. Bonjour, Mademoiselle** (to a girl). To leave: **au revoir** (goodbye), **à bientôt** (see you soon), **à demain** (see you tomorrow). In France it is rude to walk into a shop or start a question without bonjour.

How French works: tu and vous. Tu is for one person you know well: a family member, a friend, a child, a pet, and God in prayer. **Vous** is for an adult you do not know well, for anyone older or in authority, and for *any* group of two or more. So: **Comment vas-tu? Ça va?** to a friend, but **Comment allez-vous?** to a teacher. Answers: **Très bien, merci. Et vous? / Et toi? — Pas mal. — Comme ci, comme ça.** When in doubt, use vous until the other person invites you to say tu (on peut se tutoyer?).

Courtesy words. S'il vous plaît (please, formal) and **s'il te plaît** (familiar); **merci** (thank you), **merci beaucoup**; **je vous en prie** or **de rien** (you are welcome); **pardon** or **excusez-moi** (excuse me). The angel Gabriel greeted Mary: **Je te salue … le Seigneur est avec toi.** Notice that the angel uses te and toi, the tu forms, and so does every French Bible when people speak to God.

PICTURE STUDY



The Meeting, or Bonjour Monsieur Courbet, Gustave Courbet, 1854 · Oil on canvas · Musée Fabre, Montpellier

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Courbet was the leader of the Realists, painters who wanted to paint ordinary life as it really is, not gods and heroes. Here he paints himself arriving to visit Alfred Bruyas, a rich art collector from Montpellier who bought his paintings. Every figure greets differently: the servant bows humbly, the patron lifts his hat graciously, and the painter stands tall and proud. Critics found Courbet too proud, but the painting is now one of the treasures of the Musée Fabre.

Look closely

- Find the three hats. How does each man hold his?
- Which man is Courbet? How can you tell he is a traveling painter?
- Find the coach in the distance. How did Courbet arrive?
- Compare the servant's posture with Courbet's. What does each say without words?

Talk about it

1. Which man would say tu and which vous? To whom?
2. Is pride or humility the better way to greet? Why?

ACTIVITY

Greeting role-plays

Act out six short greeting scenes, choosing tu or vous each time.

You will need

- Your French notebook
- Index cards

Steps

1. Write six situations on cards: meeting the pastor after church, a friend at the park, a baker at 8 a.m., a grandmother at 7 p.m., two classmates, a little cousin at bedtime.
2. Draw a card and act out the scene with a parent: greet with the right word for the time of day, ask how the person is, answer, and take leave.
3. Decide before each scene: tu or vous? Explain why.
4. Write the best scene as a short dialogue in your notebook.

Tips

- Act the scenes with the hat gestures from Courbet's painting.
- Add a shop scene: Bonjour, Monsieur. Une baguette, s'il vous plaît. — Voilà. — Merci, au revoir!

Check your work

☐ I used bonjour and bonsoir at the right times.

☐ I chose tu or vous correctly in all six scenes.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the greetings and leave-takings with their meanings.
2. Make a two-column chart: Tu (who? how are you? please, you are welcome) and Vous (the same).
3. Copy Luke 1:28 from Je te salue in French and English.

> **From history.** French gave English many words of courtesy: courtesy itself (from cour, the royal court), polite, etiquette (French for a label or ticket, and then for the written rules of the royal court) and RSVP, short for répondez s'il vous plaît.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can greet each other only in French for a week, at the door and at the table, and practice using vous with guests.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Greet your teacher at 10 a.m. and ask how she is.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Morning: bonjour; add the title.
2. A teacher: vous.

Answer: Bonjour, Madame. Comment allez-vous?

Example 2. A friend asks: Ça va? Answer and ask back.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Ça va can be the answer too.
2. With a friend, use toi.

Answer: Ça va bien, merci. Et toi?

Example 3. Thank a shopkeeper and answer his thank-you.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Merci (beaucoup).
2. Formal you are welcome.

Answer: Merci beaucoup, Monsieur. — Je vous en prie.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Say good evening in French.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Bonsoir.

2. Easy Say goodbye and see you soon.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Au revoir. À bientôt.

3. Easy Say please to an adult you do not know.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   S’il vous plaît.

4. Medium Tu or vous: your dog, your doctor, your two brothers together?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Tu, vous, vous.

5. Medium Translate: Excuse me, Madam. Where is the church?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Excusez-moi, Madame. Où est l’église?

6. Medium Is salut right for greeting a policeman? Why or why not?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   No: salut is only for friends and family. Say Bonjour, Monsieur.

7. Hard Write a four-line dialogue between a girl and her grandfather at 8 p.m.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Bonsoir, Papi! — Bonsoir, ma chérie. Comment vas-tu? — Très bien, merci. Et toi? — Ça va bien. (Many families use tu with grandparents.)

8. Hard Why does the angel use te and toi with Mary in Luke 1:28, and what does that tell you about French Bibles?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   French Bibles use the tu forms when speaking to one person and in prayer to God; the familiar form shows closeness, as thee and thou do in the King James.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying bonsoir at noon or bonne nuit as a greeting. Bonne nuit is only for going to bed.
- Using salut with adults you do not know. Use bonjour with the title.
- Thinking vous is only formal. It is also the only way to say you to a group.

> **Make it a game · Bonjour relay.** The parent calls out a time and a person (8 heures, le boulanger! 21 heures, ta sœur!); the student answers instantly with the right greeting, title and tu or vous question. Three right in a row earns a point; switch roles after ten.

> **Scripture.** "And the angel came in unto her, and said, Hail, thou that art highly favoured, the Lord is with thee: blessed art thou among women." (Luke 1:28, KJV)
>
> In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *Je te salue, toi à qui une grâce a été faite; le Seigneur est avec toi.* The angel Gabriel greets Mary with honor. In French, he says te and toi, the familiar forms, as French Bibles do in prayer and in close speech.

UNIT 1 · BONJOUR! SALUER ET PRONONCER · LESSON 1.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

1.2 L'Alphabet: Letters, Accents and Sounds

OBJECTIVES

- Say the 26 letters of the French alphabet and spell words aloud.
- Name and use the five accent marks: aigu, grave, circonflexe, cédille, tréma.
- Apply the main sound rules: silent final letters, the CaReFuL letters, nasal vowels, the French r and liaison.
- Read John 1:1 aloud in French.

> **Warm-up.** English spelling is famous for surprises: though, through, tough, cough. French spelling has surprises too, but they follow rules, and once you know them you can read almost any French word aloud. Today you learn the system.

WATCH

The French Alphabet (French Essentials Lesson 3)

Learn French With Alexa · 8:44

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=PaOVHdpRAK8

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How French works paragraph on the letters. Say each letter after Alexa.

Note: Learn French With Alexa teaches the French alphabet (French Essentials Lesson 3), about nine minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

French accents - part 1 (French Essentials Lesson 17)

Learn French With Alexa · 9:35

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=7VOhQ2V4E14

Session 2 or 3: the first lesson on French accent marks.

KEY TERMS

l’alphabet

The alphabet: the same 26 letters as English, with French names.

l’accent

An accent mark: aigu (é), grave (è, à, ù), circonflexe (ê, â, î, ô, û), plus the cédille (ç) and the tréma (ë, ï).

la voyelle nasale

Nasal vowel: an, en, on, in, un, hummed through the nose with the n not fully said.

la liaison

Linking: a silent final consonant is sounded before a word beginning with a vowel: les amis (lay-zah-MEE).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

la lettre

lah LEHTR

la · writing

letter

le mot

luh MOH

le · writing

word

la voyelle

lah vwah-YEL

la · writing

vowel

l'accent

lak-SAHN

le · writing

accent mark

épeler

ay-puh-LAY

verb

to spell

lire

LEER

verb

to read

écrire

ay-KREER

verb

to write

la langue

lah LAHNG

la · language

language; tongue

le français

luh frahn-SEH

le · language

French (language)

la Parole

lah pah-ROHL

la · faith

the Word

Dieu

DYUH

faith

God

le commencement

luh koh-mahns-MAHN

le · time

beginning

CORE IDEAS

The story. In 1539 King Francis I signed a law at his castle of Villers-Cotterêts ordering that all laws and court records be written in French instead of Latin, so that ordinary people could understand them. It is still in force, the oldest French law that is. A century later, in 1635, Cardinal Richelieu founded the Académie française, forty

scholars charged with keeping the language clear and correct; their first dictionary appeared in 1694. The French take their language seriously, and so will we.

How French works: the letters. a (ah), b (bay), c (say), d (day), e (uh), f (ef), g (zhay), h (ahsh), i (ee), j (zhee), k (kah), l (el), m (em), n (en), o (oh), p (pay), q (kü), r (ehr), s (es), t (tay), u (ü), v (vay), w (doo-bluh-VAY), x (eeks), y (ee-GREK), z (zed). Careful: e sounds like uh, i like ee, and g and j are swapped from English. The French u (ü) has no English match: say ee and round your lips as for oo.

How French works: accents. Accents are part of the spelling. **é** (accent aigu) says ay: été. **è** (grave) says eh: père; on à and où it only separates words (a = has, à = to). **ê** (circonflexe) often marks an s that fell out of the word long ago: forêt (forest), hôpital (hospital), fête (feast). **ç** (cédille) makes c soft before a, o, u: français. The **tréma** tells you to sound two vowels separately: Noël (noh-EL).

How French works: the sound rules. Most final consonants are silent: peti(t), gran(d), Pari(s). But c, r, f and l are usually sounded (think CaReFuL): avec, bonjour, neuf, il (except -er verbs: parler). A final e without an accent is silent: la porte. **On, an/en, in/ain, un** are nasal: bon, enfant, vin, pain, un. The French **r** is made at the back of the throat, like a soft gargle. French stresses the *last* sounded syllable lightly: Pa-RIS, ma-de-moi-SELLE. Read John 1:1 slowly: **Au commencement était la Parole, et la Parole était avec Dieu, et la Parole était Dieu.**

ACTIVITY

Épeler et lire (spell and read)

Spell names aloud, then read a verse with careful sounds.

You will need

- Your French notebook
- Your Louis Segond Bible

Steps

1. Spell your full name aloud with French letter names, then the names of everyone in your family.
2. Read this list aloud, marking each silent letter with a slash before you read: petit, grand, Paris, avec, bonjour, neuf, parler, l'enfant, le pain, les amis.
3. Read John 1:1 aloud three times: slowly, normally, and to a parent.
4. Find five words with accents on any French label in your house (or in this lesson) and copy them with their accent names.

Tips

- Record yourself reading John 1:1 and listen for silent letters you pronounced by mistake.
- Spell a word aloud with accents: F-R-A-N-C cédille-A-I-S.

Check your work

☐ I spelled my name with French letter names.

☐ I read John 1:1 with silent final letters and nasal vowels.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the alphabet with the French letter names.
2. Copy the five accent marks with a word for each.
3. Copy the rule CaReFuL with three examples and three silent-letter examples.
4. Copy John 1:1 in French and English.

> **From history.** The ordinance of Villers-Cotterêts of 1539 is the oldest law still in force in France. In 2023 the castle where it was signed opened as the Cité internationale de la langue française, a museum of the French language.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can read a short French children's book aloud together each night, the student reading one page and pointing out every silent letter.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. How do you say petit, and why?

▼ **Show solution**

1. Final t is not c, r, f or l.
2. So it is silent.

Answer: puh-TEE.

Example 2. Why does français have a cédille?

▼ **Show solution**

1. C before a is hard (k) without it.
2. The cédille makes it soft (s).

Answer: So that it says frahn-SEH, not frahn-KEH.

Example 3. How do you say les amis?

▼ **Show solution**

1. Les ends in a silent s.
2. Amis begins with a vowel, so make the liaison with a z sound.

Answer: lay-zah-MEE.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Spell Dieu with French letter names.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   dé, i, e, u.

2. Easy What does the cédille do?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   It makes c sound like s before a, o or u.

3. Easy Is the final s in Paris sounded?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   No.

4. Medium Which final letters are usually sounded? Give a word for each.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   C (avec), r (bonjour), f (neuf), l (il).

5. Medium What lost letter does the circonflexe in forêt and fête remind you of?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   An s: forest, feast.

6. Medium Mark the nasal vowels: bonjour, enfant, pain, un, lune.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   bonjour (on), enfant (en and an), pain (ain), un (un); lune is not nasal, because its n is followed by a vowel.

7. Hard Read aloud and explain each silent letter: Les enfants sont petits.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   les (s silent, but liaison z before enfants), enfants (t, s silent), sont (t silent), petits (t, s silent).

8. Hard Why did Francis I order laws to be written in French in 1539?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   So that ordinary people, who did not know Latin, could understand the laws and court records.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Pronouncing every final letter, as in English: PET-it. Most final consonants are silent.
- Saying French u like English oo. Round your lips and say ee: ü.
- Leaving off accents. They are spelling: a (has) and à (to) are different words.

> **Make it a game · Épellation (spelling bee).** The parent says a French word from this unit (bonjour, merci, français, Noël, forêt, Paris); the student spells it aloud with French letter names, including accents (e accent aigu, c cédille). Then switch: the student gives the parent a word.

> **Scripture.** "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God." (John 1:1, KJV)
>
> In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *Au commencement était la Parole, et la Parole était avec Dieu, et la Parole était Dieu.* John begins his Gospel with the eternal Word. Louis Segond translates the Word as la Parole, the spoken word; read it aloud slowly, with every final letter silent except in avec.

UNIT 1 · BONJOUR! SALUER ET PRONONCER · LESSON 1.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

1.3 Les Nombres de 0 à 30

OBJECTIVES

- Count from 0 to 30 in French and write the numbers in words.
- Ask and answer Combien? and Combien de …? with il y a.
- Ask and tell age with avoir: Quel âge as-tu? J'ai quinze ans.
- Read Genesis 1:5 in French.

> **Warm-up.** How many people are in your family? How old are you? How many days until Sunday? You answer number questions all day. Today you learn to do it in French.

WATCH

French Numbers 1 to 20 (French Essentials Lesson 2)

Learn French With Alexa · 8:11

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=H2-REbL2OU0

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the teaching. Count along and pause to repeat.

Note: Learn French With Alexa teaches the numbers 1 to 20 (French Essentials Lesson 2), about eight minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Beginner French made easy! Asking questions in French, learning numbers and telling your age!

Learn French With Alexa · 10:27

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=CH9sQsnnIoE

Session 2 or 3: asking questions, numbers and telling your age.

KEY TERMS

le nombre / le chiffre

Number / digit (luh NOHMBR / luh SHEEFR).

combien (de)

How much, how many (kohn-BYAN).

il y a

There is, there are (eel-ee-AH).

avoir … ans

To be … years old: French says I have fifteen years.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

un, deux, trois
UN, DUH, TRWAH
number
one, two, three

quatre, cinq, six
KAHTR, SANK, SEES
number
four, five, six

sept, huit, neuf, dix
SET, WEET, NUHF, DEES
number
seven, eight, nine, ten

onze, douze, treize
OHNZ, DOOZ, TREHZ
number
eleven, twelve, thirteen

quatorze, quinze, seize
kah-TORZ, KANZ, SEHZ
number
fourteen, fifteen, sixteen

vingt
VAN
number
twenty

trente
TRAHNT
number
thirty

combien (de)
kohn-BYAN
question
how many, how much

il y a
eel-ee-AH
phrase
there is, there are

l'âge
LAHZH
le · life
age

l'an / l'année
LAHN / lah-NAY
le / la · time
year

le jour
luh ZHOOR
le · time
day

CORE IDEAS

The story. In the 1790s French scientists set out to measure the earth itself, surveying the line from Dunkirk to Barcelona, to make a new measure of length for everyone: the mètre, one ten-millionth of the distance from the North Pole to the equator. With it came the whole metric system, counting by tens, now used almost

everywhere in the world. French has given the world its way of measuring; let us learn its way of counting.

How French works: 0–16. zéro, un, deux, trois, quatre, cinq, six, sept, huit, neuf, dix, onze, douze, treize, quatorze, quinze, seize. Watch the sounds: the p in sept is silent (SET); six and dix end in s (SEES, DEES) when said alone; huit says weet.

How French works: 17–30. From 17, French adds: **dix-sept (10 + 7), dix-huit, dix-neuf, vingt (20), vingt et un, vingt-deux, vingt-trois … vingt-neuf, trente (30).** Note **et** in 21 (vingt et un, no hyphens) and hyphens in the others. Before a noun, un becomes **une** with feminine words: vingt et une personnes.

How French works: questions. Combien de frères as-tu? — J'ai deux frères. Combien de jours y a-t-il en avril? — Il y a trente jours. For age, French uses avoir, to have: **Quel âge as-tu? — J'ai quinze ans.** (Never je suis quinze.) Genesis counts the days of creation: **Ainsi, il y eut un soir, et il y eut un matin: ce fut le premier jour.** Il y eut is the old past of il y a: there was.

ACTIVITY

Le recensement (the census)

Take a French census of your household.

You will need

- Your French notebook
- A pencil and ruler

Steps

1. Make a table with questions in French: Combien de personnes? Combien de chambres? Combien de fenêtres? Combien de livres sur l'étagère? Combien de chaises?
2. Count each thing and write the answer as a full sentence in words: Il y a six personnes.
3. Interview each family member: Quel âge as-tu? Write the answer: Papa a quarante ans (or a number to 30 for younger ones).
4. Present your census aloud to the family.

Tips

- Count backward from trente to zéro as fast as you can.
- Add metric measurements: La table mesure deux mètres.

Check your work

☐ I wrote ten numbers in words correctly.

☐ I asked and answered with combien and il y a.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Write the numbers 0 to 30 in words.
2. Copy the age question and answer, and the combien pattern with two examples.
3. Copy Genesis 1:5 in French and English.

> **From history.** France made the metric system compulsory in 1840. The original platinum standard metre of 1799 is still kept in the National Archives in Paris.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can count everything in French for a week: stairs, plates, cars, and the days until Sunday.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Write 27 in words.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Twenty is vingt.
2. Join seven with a hyphen.

Answer: vingt-sept.

Example 2. Answer: Quel âge as-tu? (14)

▼ **Show solution**

1. Use avoir: j'ai.
2. Add ans.

Answer: J'ai quatorze ans.

Example 3. Translate: There are twelve apostles.

▼ **Show solution**

1. There are = il y a.
2. Douze.

Answer: Il y a douze apôtres.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Count from 1 to 10 in French.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   un, deux, trois, quatre, cinq, six, sept, huit, neuf, dix.

2. Easy Write 15 and 16.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   quinze, seize.

3. Easy What does il y a mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   There is / there are.

4. Medium Write 18, 21 and 29.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   dix-huit, vingt et un, vingt-neuf.

5. Medium Ask a friend how many sisters he has.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Combien de sœurs as-tu?

6. Medium Translate: She is eleven years old.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Elle a onze ans.

7. Hard Translate: How many days are there in February? There are twenty-eight days.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Combien de jours y a-t-il en février? Il y a vingt-huit jours.

8. Hard What did French scientists measure to define the mètre?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Part of the earth (the line from Dunkirk to Barcelona), to set the metre as one ten-millionth of the distance from the North Pole to the equator.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying je suis quinze ans. French uses avoir: j'ai quinze ans.
- Writing vingt-et-un with hyphens or vingt-un. The traditional spelling is vingt et un.
- Pronouncing the p in sept. It is silent: SET.

> **Make it a game · Le compte est bon.** The parent says two numbers and plus or moins (douze plus sept! vingt moins quatre!); the student answers in French within five seconds. Keep all answers between zéro and trente. Then switch roles.

> **Scripture.** “And God called the light Day, and the darkness he called Night. And the evening and the morning were the first day.” (Genesis 1:5, KJV)
>
> In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *Ainsi, il y eut un soir, et il y eut un matin: ce fut le premier jour.* God names the day and the night, and counts the first day of creation. In French: ce fut le premier jour.

UNIT 2

Qui Suis-Je? Être et Décrire

Lesson 2.1 teaches the introduction: Comment t’appelles-tu? Je m’appelle …, J’habite à …, and introducing others (Je vous présente …), with John 10:3, he calleth his own sheep by name. Lesson 2.2 conjugates être (je suis, tu es, il est, nous sommes, vous êtes, ils sont), the subject pronouns including on, and c’est versus il est, with Exodus 3:14, Je suis celui qui suis.

Lesson 2.3 describes people: every French noun is masculine or feminine, and adjectives agree (grand, grande, grands, grandes), with nationalities (français, française) and the painter Élisabeth Vigée Le Brun, whose self-portrait in a straw hat is the unit’s picture. Genesis 1:27 shows the first and deepest pair: il créa l’homme et la femme.

PREREQUISITES

- Unit 1.

MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can introduce myself and others and ask someone’s name, home and origin.
- ☐ I can conjugate être and use the subject pronouns, including on.
- ☐ I can choose c’est or il/elle est.
- ☐ I can make adjectives and nationalities agree in gender and number.
- ☐ I can describe a person in five French sentences.

OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **A Louis Segond 1910 Bible (print, or free online)**: Bible Gateway lists it as Louis Segond (LSG). Used all year.
- **WordReference French–English dictionary**: Free online, for the parent. Look up any word and press the speaker button to hear it said by a speaker from France or Quebec.

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

LESSONS IN THIS UNIT

2.1	**Je M'appelle: Introductions**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
2.2	**Je Suis: The Verb Être**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
2.3	**Grand ou Grande? Describing People**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

Unit 2 test

Unit 2 test. Questions 1–2 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written. 50 points.

1. **5 pts**
   Oral: Introduce yourself in four sentences: name, age, where you live, where you come from.
2. **5 pts**
   Oral: Describe a family member in three sentences with être and adjectives.
3. **5 pts**
   Conjugate être in the present tense.
4. **5 pts**
   Write the subject pronoun: (a) Marie, (b) Paul et Jean, (c) Marie et Claire, (d) Paul et Marie, (e) people in general.

5. **5 pts**

   Complete with the right form of être: Nous ___ français. Tu ___ en retard. Elles ___ sœurs. Je ___ prêt. Vous ___ gentils.

6. **5 pts**

   Make the adjective agree: une fille (grand); des garçons (intelligent); une femme (français); des maisons (petit); un homme (sportif).

7. **5 pts**

   C'est or il/elle est: ___ mon père. ___ médecin. ___ une belle église. ___ grande.

8. **5 pts**

   Write the feminine: américain, canadien, anglais, heureux, gentil.

9. **5 pts**

   Translate: Who are you? I am Pierre. I come from Quebec, and I live in Montreal.

10. **5 pts**

    Who was Élisabeth Vigée Le Brun, and what does her self-portrait show?

ANSWER KEY

1. Je m'appelle ___. J'ai ___ ans. J'habite à ___. Je viens de ___ (Je suis de ___).
2. Ma mère est grande. Elle est gentille. Elle est américaine. (agreement checked)
3. je suis, tu es, il/elle/on est, nous sommes, vous êtes, ils/elles sont.
4. (a) elle, (b) ils, (c) elles, (d) ils, (e) on.
5. sommes, es, sont, suis, êtes.
6. grande; intelligents; française; petites; sportif.
7. C'est; Il est; C'est; Elle est.
8. américaine, canadienne, anglaise, heureuse, gentille.
9. Qui es-tu? (Qui êtes-vous?) Je suis Pierre. Je viens de Québec (du Québec), et j'habite à Montréal.
10. A French portrait painter of the 1700s who painted Queen Marie-Antoinette; her self-portrait shows her in a straw hat with flowers and a feather, holding her palette and brushes, a confident working artist.

> Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

UNIT CHALLENGE: MON AUTOPORTRAIT (MY SELF-PORTRAIT)

Draw or paint a self-portrait in the manner of Vigée Le Brun, holding something that shows who you are (a book, a ball, a violin, a palette). Beside it, write a French description of at least ten sentences: name, age, home, origin, nationality, appearance and character, using être, avoir and five adjectives that agree. Present it aloud.

LOOK FOR	WHAT IT MEANS
Introduction	Gives name, age, home and origin correctly.
Être	Conjugates être correctly and chooses c'est or il est.
Agreement	Makes at least five adjectives agree correctly.
Portrait	The picture and words together show who the student is.

UNIT 2 · QUI SUIS-JE? ÊTRE ET DÉCRIRE · LESSON 2.1 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

2.1 Je M'appelle: Introductions

OBJECTIVES

- Ask and tell names: Comment t'appelles-tu? / Comment vous appelez-vous? Je m'appelle …
- Tell where you live and come from: J'habite à …, Je viens de …
- Introduce other people: Je te présente … / Je vous présente …, Enchanté(e).
- Read John 10:3 in French.

> **Warm-up.** What is the first thing you tell someone you meet? Your name. In the Bible, names matter: God names Adam, renames Abram and Jacob, and the Good Shepherd calls his sheep by name. Today you learn to give yours in French.

WATCH

Learn French - How to Introduce Yourself in French

Learn French with FrenchPod101.com · 3:10

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=_4N46dVx9nE

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How French works paragraphs. Repeat each line aloud.

Note: FrenchPod101 teaches how to introduce yourself in French, about three minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Learn the Top 10 French Lines You Need for Introducing Yourself

Learn French with FrenchPod101.com · 3:14

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=JY_d_sTRi68

Session 2 or 3: ten more lines for introductions.

KEY TERMS

s’appeler
To be called: je m’appelle (I am called), tu t’appelles, il s’appelle.

habiter
To live (in a place): j’habite à Lyon.

venir de
To come from: je viens de Paris.

enchanté(e)
Delighted, pleased to meet you (add e if you are a girl).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

s’appeler
sah-puh-LAY
verb
to be called

je m’appelle
zhuh mah-PEL
phrase
my name is

le nom

luh NOHN

le · identity

name; last name

le prénom

luh pray-NOHN

le · identity

first name

habiter

ah-bee-TAY

verb

to live (in)

la ville

lah VEEL

la · places

city, town

venir de

vuh-NEER duh

verb

to come from

où

OO

question

where

d'où

DOO

question

from where

présenter

pray-zahn-TAY

verb

to introduce

enchanté(e)

ahn-shahn-TAY

adjective

pleased to meet you

l'ami / l'amie

lah-MEE

le / la · people

friend

CORE IDEAS

The story. When the explorer Samuel de Champlain met the Montagnais, Algonquin and Huron peoples along the St. Lawrence in the early 1600s, introductions were everything: he could do nothing without knowing who was who, and he sent young Frenchmen to live with them and learn their languages. A good introduction is the first step to friendship, trade and, for the missionaries who followed, to preaching the gospel. Jesus himself said the Good Shepherd calleth his own sheep by name.

How French works: names. French does not say my name is as often as I call myself: **Je m'appelle Marie.** To ask: **Comment t'appelles-tu?** (to a young person or friend) or

Comment vous appelez-vous? (formal). For someone else: **Il s’appelle Paul. Elle s’appelle Claire.** You may also simply say **Je suis Marie.**

How French works: where from. Où habites-tu? — J’habite à Chicago. (À before a city.) **D’où viens-tu? — Je viens de Chicago.** (De before a city; d’ before a vowel: je viens d’Ottawa.) Countries come later; for now, use cities.

How French works: introducing others. Je te présente mon ami Luc. (to a friend) **Je vous présente ma mère.** (formal or to several people) The answer: **Enchanté!** (a boy) or **Enchantée!** (a girl), or **Bonjour, Madame.** French people shake hands with strangers; between family and friends they often give la bise, a light kiss on each cheek.

ACTIVITY

La carte d’identité

Make a French identity card and use it in introductions.

You will need

- Card stock, a photo or drawing of yourself
- Pen

Steps

1. Make a card with the French labels: Nom, Prénom, Âge, Ville, Pays.
2. Fill it in for yourself, and make two more for family members.
3. Using the cards, introduce yourself and then introduce each family member to a parent playing a visitor: Je vous présente mon frère. Il s’appelle Jean. Il a douze ans.
4. The visitor answers Enchanté(e) and asks one question.

Tips

- Make a card for a historical person, such as Champlain, and introduce him.
- Practice la bise or a handshake with each introduction.

Check your work

☐ I introduced myself in four sentences.

☐ I introduced someone else correctly.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the name questions (tu and vous) and the answers.
2. Write a five-sentence introduction of yourself.
3. Copy John 10:3 from il appelle in French and English.

> **From history.** Champlain founded Quebec City in 1608 and is called the Father of New France. He wrote careful books describing the peoples he met, their villages and their customs.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can practice introductions with guests and teach the student when to shake hands and when to give la bise.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Ask an adult her name.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Formal: vous.
2. Comment vous appelez-vous?

Answer: Comment vous appelez-vous, Madame?

Example 2. Say: My brother is called Marc.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Il s’appelle.
2. Mon frère.

Answer: Mon frère s’appelle Marc.

Example 3. Say you live in Ottawa and come from Ottawa.

▼ **Show solution**

1. À before a city.
2. De becomes d’ before a vowel.

Answer: J’habite à Ottawa. Je viens d’Ottawa.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Say: My name is … (your name).

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Je m’appelle ___.

2. Easy Ask a friend: What is your name?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Comment t’appelles-tu?

3. Easy What does enchanté mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Pleased to meet you (delighted).

4. Medium Translate: Her name is Sophie.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Elle s’appelle Sophie.

5. Medium Ask a friend where he lives.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Où habites-tu?

6. Medium Introduce your father to your teacher.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Je vous présente mon père.

7. Hard Write a three-line meeting between two teenagers in Montreal.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Salut! Je m’appelle Luc. Et toi? — Je m’appelle Anne. — Enchanté! Tu habites à Montréal? — Oui, j’habite à Montréal. (or similar)

8. Hard Why are Je m’appelle and Comment t’appelles-tu called reflexive?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The verb s’appeler means to call oneself: me and te refer back to the speaker or listener (I call myself, you call yourself).

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying Mon nom est … in every introduction. It is correct but stiff; Je m’appelle is natural.
- Writing Je appelle. Me becomes m’ before a vowel: je m’appelle.
- Using à and de with countries the same way as cities. Countries need au, en, du, de (Unit 12).

Make it a game · Qui suis-je? (Who am I?). Tape a card with a famous name (Champlain, Jeanne d'Arc, Louis Braille, a family member) to each player's back. Players ask yes-or-no questions in French: Est-ce que je suis un homme? Est-ce que j'habite à Paris? The first to guess says Je m'appelle … and wins.

Scripture. "To him the porter openeth; and the sheep hear his voice: and he calleth his own sheep by name, and leadeth them out." (John 10:3, KJV)

In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *il appelle par leur nom les brebis qui lui appartiennent* Jesus, the Good Shepherd, knows each of his sheep and calls them by name. Notice appelle, from the same verb as je m'appelle.

UNIT 2 · QUI SUIS-JE? ÊTRE ET DÉCRIRE · LESSON 2.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

2.2 Je Suis: The Verb Être

OBJECTIVES

- Use the subject pronouns je, tu, il, elle, on, nous, vous, ils, elles.
- Conjugate être in the present tense and use it with nouns, adjectives and places.
- Choose between c'est and il/elle est.
- Read Exodus 3:14 in French.

Warm-up. What is the most important verb in any language? To be. When Moses asked God his name at the burning bush, God answered with that verb: I AM THAT I AM. Today you learn être, the French to be.

WATCH

Être (to be) — Present Tense (French verbs conjugated by Learn French With Alexa)

Learn French With Alexa · 5:39

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=CbxrZMePugU

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the conjugation chart. Say each form with Alexa.

Note: Learn French With Alexa conjugates être in the present tense, under six minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

10 Useful French Expressions with ÊTRE (to be)

Learn French With Alexa · 3:52

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=OQa1pu3DQNM

Session 2 or 3: ten useful expressions with être.

KEY TERMS

le pronom sujet
Subject pronoun: je, tu, il, elle, on, nous, vous, ils, elles.

être
To be (EHTR): irregular.

on
One, we, people in general: on est en retard (we are late).

c'est / il est
It is, he is, she is: c'est before a noun with an article, il/elle est before an adjective or a bare profession.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

je, tu, il, elle
zhuh, tü, eel, el
pronoun
I, you, he/it, she/it

on
OHN
pronoun
one, people; we (informal)

nous, vous
noo, voo
pronoun
we, you (formal or plural)

ils, elles
eel, el
pronoun
they (masc./mixed, fem.)

être
EHTR
verb
to be

le professeur
luh proh-feh-SUHR
le · work
teacher

le médecin
luh mayd-SAN
le · work
doctor

l'élève
lay-LEV
le / la · school
pupil

fatigué(e)
fah-tee-GAY
adjective
tired

content(e)
kohn-TAHN
adjective
happy, pleased

en retard
ahn ruh-TAR
phrase
late

l'Éternel
lay-tehr-NEL
faith
the LORD (the Eternal)

CORE IDEAS

The story. At the burning bush, Moses asked what name he should give the people of Israel. God answered: **Je suis celui qui suis**, I AM THAT I AM. God simply is, without beginning or end, the One on whom everything else depends. Louis Segond writes

God's name l'Éternel, the Eternal, for the same reason. Every time you say je suis, you are using the verb God chose for his own name.

How French works: the pronouns. je (I; j' before a vowel), **tu** (you, familiar), **il** (he, it), **elle** (she, it), **on** (one, people, and in conversation we), **nous** (we), **vous** (you, formal or plural), **ils** (they: all-male or mixed group), **elles** (they: all-female group). Il and elle also mean it, because every thing is masculine or feminine: le livre → il; la maison → elle.

How French works: être. je suis, tu es, il/elle/on est, nous sommes, vous êtes, ils/elles sont. Say it standing up until it is automatic. Uses: **Je suis Marie.** (identity) **Nous sommes américains.** (nationality) **Elle est grande.** (description) **Ils sont à l'église.** (place) **Il est professeur.** (profession, with no un or une). Negative: ne … pas around the verb: **Je ne suis pas fatigué.**

How French works: c'est or il est? Use **c'est** before a noun with a little word in front: **C'est mon père. C'est un médecin. C'est une belle église.** Use **il est / elle est** before an adjective or a bare profession: **Il est médecin. Elle est belle.** For things in general, c'est + adjective: **C'est beau!** (That's beautiful!)

ACTIVITY

Le jeu des métiers (the job game)

Act out professions and describe them with être.

You will need

- Index cards
- Simple props (a book, a hammer, a stethoscope, an apron)

Steps

1. Write ten professions on cards: professeur, médecin, boulanger, fermier, pasteur, infirmière, peintre, musicien, soldat, menuisier.
2. Draw a card and mime the job. The others guess with être: Tu es boulanger? — Oui, je suis boulanger! / Non, je ne suis pas boulanger.
3. After each round, describe the person with c'est and il/elle est: C'est un boulanger. Il est boulanger. Il est fort.
4. Write five of the sentences in your notebook.

Tips

- Play with two people miming together: Vous êtes musiciens? — Oui, nous sommes musiciens!
- Add negatives to every wrong guess.

Check your work

☐ I used six forms of être correctly.

☐ I chose c'est and il est correctly.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the subject pronouns with their meanings.
2. Copy the conjugation of être and say it aloud five times.
3. Write three sentences with c'est and three with il est or elle est.
4. Copy Exodus 3:14 from Dieu dit in French and English.

> **From history.** English to be is a patchwork of three old verbs (be, am/is, was); French être is a patchwork too, built from Latin esse (to be) and stare (to stand), which is why its forms look so different from one another.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can chant être together at breakfast all week, each person saying one form in turn around the table.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Complete: Nous ___ à la maison.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Nous takes sommes.
2. À la maison = at home.

Answer: Nous sommes à la maison.

Example 2. Choose: ___ un bon professeur.

▼ **Show solution**

1. There is a noun with un.
2. Use c’est.

Answer: C’est un bon professeur.

Example 3. Make negative: Tu es en retard.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Ne before the verb, pas after.
2. Ne + es: n’es.

Answer: Tu n’es pas en retard.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Conjugate être for je, tu and il.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   je suis, tu es, il est.

2. Easy Which pronoun replaces Pierre et Marie?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ils.

3. Easy What does on mean in conversation?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   We (also one, people in general).

4. Medium Complete: Vous ___ gentils. Elles ___ là.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   êtes; sont.

5. Medium Translate: She is a doctor.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Elle est médecin. (or C’est une médecin / un médecin.)

6. Medium C’est or il est: ___ mon ami. ___ intelligent.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   C’est; Il est.

7. Hard Translate: We are not tired; we are happy.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Nous ne sommes pas fatigués; nous sommes contents (heureux).

8. Hard Translate Exodus 3:14a into English from the French: Dieu dit à Moïse: Je suis celui qui suis.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   God said to Moses: I am the one who is (I AM THAT I AM).

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying je suis un professeur. With il est / je suis, drop the article: je suis professeur.
- Using elles for a mixed group. One boy makes the group ils.
- Writing vous êtes without the circonflexe. Êtes needs it.

> **Make it a game · Pronoun ping-pong.** The parent says a subject (nous! ma sœur! Paul et moi! les filles!); the student answers instantly with the right form of être and a word: nous sommes contents! elle est grande! Ten in a row without a slip wins.

> **Scripture.** "And God said unto Moses, I AM THAT I AM: and he said, Thus shalt thou say unto the children of Israel, I AM hath sent me unto you." (Exodus 3:14, KJV)
>
> In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *Dieu dit à Moïse: Je suis celui qui suis.* God reveals his name to Moses at the burning bush: I AM. In French, the verb is être: Je suis celui qui suis.

UNIT 2 · QUI SUIS-JE? ÊTRE ET DÉCRIRE · LESSON 2.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

2.3 Grand ou Grande? Describing People

OBJECTIVES

- Recognize masculine and feminine nouns with le, la, un, une.
- Make adjectives agree in gender and number and place them after the noun (with a few before).
- Use nationalities: français, française, américain, américaine, canadien, canadienne.
- Describe Vigée Le Brun's self-portrait in French.

> **Warm-up.** Describe yourself in three words. In English the words never change. In French, a tall boy is grand, a tall girl is grande, and tall children are grands. Today you learn why.

WATCH

Crazy in French? 50 French Adjectives to Describe People

Learn French With Alexa · 7:10

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Ad5T8krCUNU

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the How French works paragraphs. Pause on each pair and say both forms.

Note: Learn French With Alexa: fifty French adjectives to describe people, about seven minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Top 10 French Words for Nationalities You Must Know

Learn French with FrenchPod101.com · 7:06

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=fRKjGny0Pn4

Session 2 or 3: nationalities in French.

KEY TERMS

masculin / féminin
Masculine / feminine: every French noun is one or the other.

l'accord
Agreement: an adjective takes the gender and number of its noun.

la nationalité
Nationality: written with a small letter as an adjective (il est français), a capital as a noun (un Français).

l'autoportrait
Self-portrait.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

grand(e)

GRAHN / GRAHND

adjective

tall, big

petit(e)

puh-TEE / puh-TEET

adjective

small, short

jeune

ZHUHN

adjective

young

vieux / vieille

VYUH / VYAY

adjective

old

beau / belle

BOH / BEL

adjective

beautiful, handsome

gentil(le)

zhahn-TEE / zhahn-TEEY

adjective

kind, nice

heureux / heureuse

uh-RUH / uh-RUHZ

adjective

happy

intelligent(e)

an-teh-lee-ZHAHN(T)

adjective

intelligent

français(e)

frahn-SEH / frahn-SEZ

adjective

French

américain(e)

ah-may-ree-KAN / ah-may-ree-KEN

adjective

American

l'homme / la femme

LOHM / lah FAHM

le / la · people

man / woman

le peintre

luh PANTR

le · work

painter

CORE IDEAS

The story. Élisabeth Vigée Le Brun was the daughter of a Paris painter who died when she was twelve. She taught herself by copying the old masters and by fifteen was earning a living with her portraits. She became the favorite painter of Queen Marie-Antoinette and was elected to the Royal Academy in 1783. When the

Revolution came in 1789, she fled with her daughter and painted her way across Europe, from Rome to Vienna to Saint Petersburg, before coming home to France.

How French works: masculine and feminine. Every noun is masculine (le, un) or feminine (la, une): **le garçon, un livre; la fille, une église.** Before a vowel, le and la become l': l'homme, l'église. The plural is les (and des): les garçons, des filles. Learn every noun with its little word. God made mankind male and female (Genesis 1:27: **il créa l'homme et la femme**), and French grammar keeps that pair in every sentence.

How French works: agreement. Add **-e** for the feminine and **-s** for the plural: **un garçon grand, une fille grande, des garçons grands, des filles grandes.** If the adjective already ends in e, it does not change: **un homme / une femme sympathique.** Some change more: **heureux → heureuse, sportif → sportive, gentil → gentille, bon → bonne, beau → belle.** Most adjectives go after the noun (une femme intelligente), but a few short common ones go before: beau, jeune, vieux, bon, petit, grand, joli (une jolie robe).

How French works: nationalities. Il est français, elle est française. Il est américain, elle est américaine. Il est canadien, elle est canadienne. Il est anglais, elle est anglaise. As adjectives they take a small letter; as nouns, a capital: un Français, une Canadienne. Vigée Le Brun would say: **Je suis française. Je suis peintre. Je suis jeune et heureuse.**

PICTURE STUDY



Self-Portrait in a Straw Hat, Élisabeth Louise Vigée Le Brun, after 1782 · Oil on canvas · National Gallery, London

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

In 1782 Vigée Le Brun traveled to Antwerp and saw a famous portrait by Rubens of a woman in a hat, lit by daylight. She went home and painted herself the same way, outdoors, with the light falling on her face from above, but holding the tools of her trade. This version, painted by her after 1782, hangs in the National Gallery in London. It says plainly: I am a painter, and I am good at it.

Look closely

- Find the palette and the brushes. What do they tell us about her?
- What is on her hat?
- Where is the light coming from? Look at the shadow from the brim of the hat.
- Describe her clothes in French: la robe rose, le chapeau de paille, le châle noir.

Talk about it

1. Why might a painter put her palette in her own portrait?
2. What would you hold in a portrait of yourself?

ACTIVITY

Portrait parlé (spoken portrait)

Describe family members and famous people with adjectives that agree.

You will need

- Your French notebook
- Photos or drawings of four people

Steps

1. Choose four people: two male, two female (family members, friends or famous people).
2. For each, write four sentences: name, nationality, two adjectives. Mon frère s'appelle Paul. Il est américain. Il est grand et sportif.
3. Read one description aloud without the name; the family guesses who it is.
4. Describe Vigée Le Brun in four sentences, with agreement.

Tips

- Describe a group: Mes cousines sont canadiennes et sportives.
- Use an adjective before the noun: C'est une jolie robe.

Check your work

- ☐ I made twelve adjectives agree correctly.
- ☐ I used three nationalities in the masculine and feminine.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the agreement rule with four examples (masculine, feminine, plural, feminine plural).
2. Copy six irregular feminines: heureuse, sportive, gentille, bonne, belle, vieille.
3. Copy Genesis 1:27 in French and English.

> **From history.** Vigée Le Brun painted about 660 portraits and 200 landscapes. She wrote her memoirs, Souvenirs, in her eighties, and they are still read for their picture of life before and after the Revolution.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can describe each person at the table in French with two adjectives, checking every agreement.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Make agree: une église (grand).

▼ **Show solution**

1. Église is feminine.
2. Add e.

Answer: une grande église.

Example 2. Make agree: des femmes (canadien).

▼ **Show solution**

1. Feminine plural.
2. Canadien doubles the n: canadienne + s.

Answer: des femmes canadiennes.

Example 3. Translate: My mother is kind and happy.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Feminine: gentille, heureuse.
2. Ma mère est …

Answer: Ma mère est gentille et heureuse.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Le or la: garçon, fille, livre, maison?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   le garçon, la fille, le livre, la maison.

2. Easy Make feminine: petit, grand, intelligent.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   petite, grande, intelligente.

3. Easy Say: She is French.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Elle est française.

4. Medium Make agree: des garçons (américain); une fille (sportif).

   ▼ **Show answer**

   des garçons américains; une fille sportive.

5. Medium Where do beau, jeune and petit go: before or after the noun?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Before: un beau livre, une jeune fille, un petit chat.

6. Medium Translate: The church is old and beautiful.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   L'église est vieille et belle.

7. Hard Describe Vigée Le Brun in three French sentences with agreement.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Elle est française. Elle est peintre. Elle est jeune, belle et heureuse. (or similar)

8. Hard Why do some adjectives end in -e in both genders? Give two.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Adjectives that already end in e do not add another: sympathique, jeune, rouge, triste, calme.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Forgetting the feminine e: une fille grand. Write grande.
- Capitalizing nationality adjectives: il est Français. Write français as an adjective.
- Putting most adjectives before the noun as in English. Most go after: une robe rose.

> **Make it a game · L'accord éclair (lightning agreement).** The parent says an adjective and a noun in English (tall girls! a happy boy! French women!); the student says it in French with the right agreement and article. Score one point for each perfect answer.

> **Scripture.** "So God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them." (Genesis 1:27, KJV)
>
> In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *Dieu créa l'homme à son image, il le créa à l'image de Dieu, il créa l'homme et la femme.* God created mankind in his own image, male and female. French says l'homme et la femme, the first masculine and feminine pair.

UNIT 3

La Famille: Avoir et les Possessifs

Lesson 3.1 names the family, from grand-père to petite-cousine, studies the Le Nain brothers' painting of three generations of a peasant family at table, and reads Exodus 20:12 in French. Lesson 3.2 conjugates avoir (j'ai, tu as, il a, nous avons, vous avez, ils ont), its negative (je n'ai pas de ...) and a dozen expressions where French says have and English says be (j'ai faim, I am hungry), with 1 John 5:12.

Lesson 3.3 teaches the possessive adjectives, which agree with the thing owned, not the owner (mon père, ma mère, mes parents; son livre means his or her book), with Ruth 1:16, ton peuple sera mon peuple, et ton Dieu sera mon Dieu. The unit challenge is a family tree presented in French.

PREREQUISITES

- Units 1–2.

MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can name the members of my family and tell their names and ages.
- ☐ I can conjugate avoir and use it in the negative with de.
- ☐ I can use ten avoir expressions (avoir faim, soif, chaud, froid, peur, raison, tort, besoin de, envie de, ... ans).
- ☐ I can use the possessive adjectives correctly.
- ☐ I can present my family in ten French sentences.

OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **A Louis Segond 1910 Bible (print, or free online)**: Bible Gateway lists it as Louis Segond (LSG). Used all year.
- **WordReference French–English dictionary**: Free online, for the parent. Look up any word and press the speaker button to hear it said by a speaker from France or Quebec.

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

LESSONS IN THIS UNIT

3.1	**Ma Famille: Family Words**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
3.2	**J'ai: The Verb Avoir**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
3.3	**Mon, Ma, Mes: Possessive Adjectives**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

Unit 3 test

Unit 3 test. Questions 1–2 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written. 50 points.

1. **5 pts**
   Oral: Present your family in five sentences (how many, names, ages, one description each).
2. **5 pts**
   Oral: Answer: As-tu des frères et sœurs? Comment s'appellent-ils? Quel âge ont-ils?
3. **5 pts**
   Conjugate avoir in the present tense.

4. **5 pts**

   Write the relative: the father of my father; the sister of my mother; the son of my uncle; the daughter of my son; my father’s wife (my mother).

5. **5 pts**

   Translate with avoir: I am hungry. She is afraid. We are right. You (tu) are cold. They are fifteen.

6. **5 pts**

   Make negative: J’ai un chien. Nous avons des cousins. Elle a une voiture.

7. **5 pts**

   Write the possessive: (my) ___ mère; (my) ___ amie; (your, tu) ___ frères; (our) ___ maison; (their) ___ enfants.

8. **5 pts**

   Translate: his sister, her brother, their father, your (vous) parents, her school.

9. **5 pts**

   What does the Le Nain painting show, and why is it unusual for its time?

10. **5 pts**

    Copy Exodus 20:12 from Honore to ta mère, and translate.

ANSWER KEY

1. Dans ma famille, il y a ___ personnes. Mon père s'appelle ___. Il a ___ ans. Ma sœur est ___. (or similar)
2. Oui, j'ai ___ frère(s) / sœur(s). Il(s) s'appelle(nt) ___. Il a / Ils ont ___ ans. (or Non, je n'ai pas de frères et sœurs.)
3. j'ai, tu as, il/elle/on a, nous avons, vous avez, ils/elles ont.
4. mon grand-père; ma tante; mon cousin; ma petite-fille; ma mère.
5. J'ai faim. Elle a peur. Nous avons raison. Tu as froid. Ils (Elles) ont quinze ans.
6. Je n'ai pas de chien. Nous n'avons pas de cousins. Elle n'a pas de voiture.
7. ma; mon; tes; notre; leurs.
8. sa sœur, son frère, leur père, vos parents, son école.
9. A poor peasant family of three generations around a table with bread and wine, painted with dignity and seriousness, when most painters of the 1640s painted kings, saints and heroes.
10. Honore ton père et ta mère. Honour thy father and thy mother.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

UNIT CHALLENGE: L'ARBRE GÉNÉALOGIQUE (THE FAMILY TREE)

Draw your family tree back to your grandparents (or as far as you can), labeling each person with the French relationship word, name and age (or dates). Present it aloud in at least twelve sentences, using avoir, être and possessives: Mon grand-père s'appelle … Il a … ans. Sa femme, ma grand-mère, … End with one sentence about a family tradition you are thankful for.

LOOK FOR	WHAT IT MEANS
Vocabulary	Uses at least ten family words correctly.
Avoir	Uses avoir for age and at least one avoir expression.
Possessives	Chooses mon/ma/mes, son/sa/ses and leur correctly.
Presentation	Speaks clearly in twelve sentences.

3.1 Ma Famille: Family Words

OBJECTIVES

- Name the members of the family in French with le or la.
- Ask and answer questions about a family: Combien de frères as-tu? Comment s'appelle ta mère?
- Describe the Le Nain brothers' Peasant Family in an Interior.
- Read Exodus 20:12 in French.

> **Warm-up.** Who sits at your table at Thanksgiving or Christmas? Name them: grandparents, aunts, uncles, cousins. Today you learn to name every one in French.

WATCH

Family Words in French Part 1 (basic French vocabulary from Learn French With Alexa)

Learn French With Alexa · 7:13

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=L5-3kpXaEi4

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the teaching. Repeat each family word with its le or la.

Note: Learn French With Alexa: family words in French, part 1, about seven minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Learn the Top 20 Must-Know French Family Words

Learn French with FrenchPod101.com · 4:08

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=nlnV_Aj419I

Session 2 or 3: twenty must-know family words.

KEY TERMS

la famille

Family (lah fah-MEEY).

les parents

Parents; also relatives in general.

le grand-père / la grand-mère

Grandfather / grandmother; plural les grands-parents.

le beau-père / la belle-mère

Father-in-law or stepfather / mother-in-law or stepmother.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

la famille
lah fah-MEEY

la · family

family

le père / la mère
luh PEHR / lah MEHR

le / la · family

father / mother

le fils / la fille
luh FEES / lah FEEY

le / la · family

son / daughter

le frère / la sœur
luh FREHR / lah SUHR

le / la · family

brother / sister

le mari / la femme
luh mah-REE / lah FAHM

le / la · family

husband / wife

les grands-parents
lay grahn-pah-RAHN

les · family

grandparents

l’oncle / la tante
LOHNKL / lah TAHNT

le / la · family

uncle / aunt

le cousin / la cousine
luh koo-ZAN / lah koo-ZEEN

le / la · family

cousin

les petits-enfants

lay puh-tee-zahn-FAHN

les · family

grandchildren

le neveu / la nièce

luh nuh-VUH / lah NYES

le / la · family

nephew / niece

fils unique

fees ü-NEEK

phrase

only son (fille unique: only daughter)

honorer

oh-noh-RAY

verb

to honor

CORE IDEAS

The story. In the 1640s three brothers from Laon, in northern France, Antoine, Louis and Mathieu Le Nain, ran a painting workshop together in Paris. They painted something few artists of their time cared about: poor country families, painted with the same seriousness as kings. Their Peasant Family shows three generations around a table with a loaf of bread and a jug of wine, quiet and dignified. The family is the first school, the first church and the first community God made.

How French works: the family. le père, la mère, les parents; le fils (FEES), la fille; le frère, la sœur; le mari, la femme (femme means both woman and wife); **le grand-père, la grand-mère, les grands-parents; le petit-fils, la petite-fille, les petits-enfants; l'oncle, la tante; le cousin, la cousine; le neveu, la nièce.** At home, children say **Papa, Maman, Papi, Mamie.**

How French works: talking about family. Dans ma famille, il y a cinq personnes. — Combien de frères as-tu? — J'ai deux frères et une sœur. — Comment s'appelle ta mère? — Ma mère s'appelle Anne. An only child says **Je suis fils unique / fille unique.** The fifth commandment: **Honore ton père et ta mère**, honour thy father and thy mother, the first commandment with a promise.

PICTURE STUDY



Peasant Family in an Interior, Louis or Antoine Le Nain, about 1642 · Oil on canvas · Musée du Louvre, Paris

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

The Le Nain brothers usually signed their paintings simply Le Nain, so experts still argue about which brother painted which picture; this one is given to Louis or Antoine. They show the family not as comic peasants, but still and serious, looking out at us. The bread and wine on the white cloth remind many viewers of the Lord's Supper, and the whole scene has the calm of a prayer.

Look closely

- Count the people. How many generations do you see?
- Find the bread and the wine on the table.
- Find the boy with the pipe. Is he playing or listening?
- Find the cat and the fire.

Talk about it

1. Why might a painter in the 1640s choose to paint a poor family?
2. What does your family's table look like at a meal?

ACTIVITY

L’album de famille

Make a family photo album with French captions.

You will need

- Photos or drawings of family members
- Paper, glue, pen

Steps

1. Glue or draw at least eight family members on a page or two.
2. Under each, write a caption: C’est mon oncle. Il s’appelle Marc.
3. Interview a parent in French: Combien de frères as-tu? Comment s’appelle ton père?
4. Present the album aloud to someone in the family.

Tips

- Add in-laws: beau-frère, belle-sœur.
- Write the dates of birth in French numbers.

Check your work

☐ I named eight family members with le or la.

☐ I asked and answered two family questions.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the family words in pairs (le père / la mère …).
2. Write six sentences about your family with il y a, s’appeler and avoir … ans.
3. Copy Exodus 20:12 in French and English.

> **From history.** Laon, the Le Nains’ home town, has one of the earliest great Gothic cathedrals, famous for the stone oxen carved on its towers in honor of the animals that hauled the stones up the hill.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can call or write to a grandparent in French and ask about the family's history.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Who is the brother of your mother?

▼ **Show solution**

1. The brother of a parent.
2. Masculine.

Answer: Mon oncle.

Example 2. Translate: In my family there are six people.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Dans ma famille.
2. Il y a.

Answer: Dans ma famille, il y a six personnes.

Example 3. Ask a friend his sister's name.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Comment s'appelle …?
2. Ta sœur (your, familiar).

Answer: Comment s'appelle ta sœur?

PRACTICE

1. Easy Say mother and father in French.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   la mère, le père.

2. Easy What is la tante?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Aunt.

3. Easy What are les grands-parents?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Grandparents.

4. Medium Who is the daughter of your aunt?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ma cousine.

5. Medium Translate: I have two brothers and one sister.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   J’ai deux frères et une sœur.

6. Medium What does femme mean in ma femme?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Wife (femme means both woman and wife).

7. Hard Translate: My grandmother is called Marie; she has five grandchildren.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ma grand-mère s’appelle Marie; elle a cinq petits-enfants.

8. Hard Why are the Le Nain brothers’ peasant paintings unusual for their time?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Most painters of the time painted kings, saints and heroes; the Le Nains painted poor peasants with dignity and seriousness.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Pronouncing the l in fils. It is silent: FEES.
- Writing les grand-parents. Both parts take an s: les grands-parents.
- Using parents only for mother and father. Les parents can also mean all your relatives.

> **Make it a game · Qui est-ce? (Who is it?).** The parent gives a family riddle: C’est la mère de ma mère. C’est le fils de mon oncle. The student answers with the French word (ma grand-mère! mon cousin!). Then the student makes riddles for the parent.

> **Scripture.** “Honour thy father and thy mother: that thy days may be long upon the land which the LORD thy God giveth thee.” (Exodus 20:12, KJV)
>
> In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *Honore ton père et ta mère, afin que tes jours se prolongent* The fifth commandment, the first with a promise: honor your father and mother. In French: Honore ton père et ta mère.

UNIT 3 · LA FAMILLE: AVOIR ET LES POSSESSIFS · LESSON 3.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

3.2 J’ai: The Verb Avoir

OBJECTIVES

- Conjugate avoir in the present tense.
- Make avoir negative with ne … pas de: Je n’ai pas de frère.
- Use ten avoir expressions where English uses to be.
- Read 1 John 5:12 in French.

> **Warm-up.** In English you are hungry, cold, afraid and fifteen. In French you have hunger, have cold, have fear and have fifteen years. Today you learn the verb that does all that: avoir.

WATCH

Avoir (to have) — Present Tense (French verbs conjugated by Learn French With Alexa)

Learn French With Alexa · 4:26

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=sA82J16mNfU

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the conjugation chart. Say each form with Alexa.

Note: Learn French With Alexa conjugates avoir in the present tense, about four and a half minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

20 Useful French Expressions with AVOIR (to have)

Learn French With Alexa · 5:00

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=EfM6WOHfzks

Session 2 or 3: twenty everyday expressions with avoir.

KEY TERMS

avoir
To have (ah-VWAHR): irregular.

ne … pas de
Not any: after a negative, un, une and des become de.

avoir faim / soif
To be hungry / thirsty.

avoir besoin de
To need.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

avoir
ah-VWAHR
verb
to have

avoir faim
ah-vwahr FAN
phrase
to be hungry

avoir soif
ah-vwahr SWAHF
phrase
to be thirsty

avoir chaud / froid
ah-vwahr SHOH / FRWAH
phrase
to be hot / cold

avoir peur (de)
ah-vwahr PUHR
phrase
to be afraid (of)

avoir raison / tort
ah-vwahr reh-ZOHN / TOR
phrase
to be right / wrong

avoir sommeil
ah-vwahr soh-MEY
phrase
to be sleepy

avoir besoin de
ah-vwahr buh-ZWAN duh
phrase
to need

avoir envie de
ah-vwahr ahn-VEE duh
phrase
to feel like

avoir mal à
ah-vwahr MAHL ah
phrase
to hurt (in a body part)

la vie
lah VEE
la · faith
life

le Fils
luh FEES
le · faith
the Son

CORE IDEAS

The story. The apostle John wrote his first letter to churches troubled by false teachers. His test was simple: **Celui qui a le Fils a la vie**, He that hath the Son hath life. To have Christ is to have everything; not to have him is to lack the one thing needful. John uses the plainest verb there is, avoir.

How French works: avoir. j'ai, tu as, il/elle/on a, nous avons, vous avez, ils/elles ont. Watch ils sont (they are, with an s sound) and ils ont (they have, with a z sound in liaison: eel-ZOHN). Uses: **J'ai un frère. Nous avons une maison. Elle a les yeux bleus.** (She has blue eyes.)

How French works: the negative. Ne … pas goes around avoir, and **un, une, des** become **de** (d’ before a vowel): **J’ai un chien. → Je n’ai pas de chien. Nous avons des cousins. → Nous n’avons pas de cousins. Il a une idée. → Il n’a pas d’idée.**

How French works: avoir expressions. avoir … ans (to be … old), **avoir faim** (hungry), **avoir soif** (thirsty), **avoir chaud / froid** (hot / cold), **avoir peur (de)** (afraid of), **avoir raison / tort** (to be right / wrong), **avoir sommeil** (sleepy), **avoir besoin de** (to need), **avoir envie de** (to feel like), **avoir mal à** (to hurt: j’ai mal à la tête). So: **J’ai faim et j’ai froid, mais tu as raison: nous avons besoin de patience!**

ACTIVITY

Mime the feeling

Act out avoir expressions and describe them.

You will need

- Index cards
- Your French notebook

Steps

1. Write ten avoir expressions on cards (faim, soif, chaud, froid, peur, sommeil, raison, tort, mal à la tête, besoin d’aide).
2. Draw a card and mime it; the others guess with a full sentence: Tu as froid! Vous avez sommeil!
3. When guessed, answer with a reason in French if you can: J’ai froid. Il neige!
4. Write a short scene with four avoir expressions: two travelers on a cold night.

Tips

- Mime in pairs and answer with nous: Nous avons faim!
- Add negative guesses: Tu n’as pas peur!

Check your work

- ☐ I used eight avoir expressions correctly.
- ☐ I made avoir negative with de.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the conjugation of avoir; say it aloud next to être to hear the difference (ils sont / ils ont).
2. Copy ten avoir expressions with their meanings.
3. Copy 1 John 5:12 in French and English.

> **From history.** Avoir comes from Latin habere, the source of English habit and inhabit. The same verb helps make the French past tense (j'ai parlé, I spoke), as you will learn in Unit 11.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can use avoir expressions all week instead of English: J'ai faim! Tu as raison! Nous avons besoin de pain.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Translate: We are hungry and thirsty.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Avoir faim, avoir soif.
2. Nous avons.

Answer: Nous avons faim et soif.

Example 2. Make negative: Tu as une sœur.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Ne … pas around as.
2. Une becomes de.

Answer: Tu n'as pas de sœur.

Example 3. Translate: My father is forty years old and he is right.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Avoir … ans.
2. Avoir raison.

Answer: Mon père a quarante ans et il a raison.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Conjugate avoir for je, tu and il.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   j’ai, tu as, il a.

2. Easy What does avoir peur mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   To be afraid.

3. Easy Say: I am cold.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   J’ai froid.

4. Medium Complete: Ils ___ un chat. Vous ___ raison.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   ont; avez.

5. Medium Make negative: Elle a des amis.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Elle n’a pas d’amis.

6. Medium Translate: I need a pencil.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   J’ai besoin d’un crayon.

7. Hard Translate: The children are sleepy, but they are not afraid.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Les enfants ont sommeil, mais ils n’ont pas peur.

8. Hard Translate 1 John 5:12 into English from the French: Celui qui a le Fils a la vie.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   He that hath (who has) the Son hath (has) life.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying je suis faim or je suis froid. French uses avoir: j'ai faim, j'ai froid.
- Keeping un or des after a negative: je n'ai pas un chien. Use de: je n'ai pas de chien.
- Confusing ils sont (eel SOHN) and ils ont (eel ZOHN).

> **Make it a game · Avoir ou être?.** The parent says an English sentence (I am hungry! She is tall! They are right! We are French!); the student shouts avoir! or être! and then says the sentence in French. Ten right wins.

> **Scripture.** "He that hath the Son hath life; and he that hath not the Son of God hath not life." (1 John 5:12, KJV)
>
> In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *Celui qui a le Fils a la vie; celui qui n'a pas le Fils de Dieu n'a pas la vie.* John teaches that having the Son of God means having life. The French verse uses avoir four times: a, a, n'a pas, n'a pas.

UNIT 3 · LA FAMILLE: AVOIR ET LES POSSESSIFS · LESSON 3.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

3.3 Mon, Ma, Mes: Possessive Adjectives

OBJECTIVES

- Use the possessive adjectives mon, ma, mes, ton, ta, tes, son, sa, ses, notre, nos, votre, vos, leur, leurs.
- Make the possessive agree with the thing owned, not the owner.
- Use mon, ton, son before a feminine word beginning with a vowel.
- Read Ruth 1:16 in French.

> **Warm-up.** In English, his book and her book use different words, because English looks at the owner. French looks at the book. Today you learn to think the French way.

WATCH

French Made Easy: How to say MY, YOUR, OUR, etc. (French Possessive Adjectives)

Learn French With Alexa · 5:04

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=jXt-dAm6_-U

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the chart. Pause and make your own example for each.

Note: Learn French With Alexa explains how to say my, your, our and their (possessive adjectives), about five minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

French Possessive Adjectives (Masculine Singular)

Learn French With Alexa · 10:16

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=TFCkx4kl5rc

Session 2 or 3: more practice with the masculine singular possessives.

KEY TERMS

l'adjectif possessif

Possessive adjective: my, your, his, her, our, their.

son / sa / ses

His or her: chosen by the thing owned. Son livre = his book or her book.

leur / leurs

Their: leur maison (one house), leurs enfants (several children).

le peuple

A people, a nation.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

mon, ma, mes
MOHN, MAH, MAY
possessive
my

ton, ta, tes
TOHN, TAH, TAY
possessive
your (familiar)

son, sa, ses
SOHN, SAH, SAY
possessive
his, her, its

notre, nos
NOHTR, NOH
possessive
our

votre, vos
VOHTR, VOH
possessive
your (formal / plural)

leur, leurs
LUHR
possessive
their

le peuple
luh PUHPL
le · people
a people, nation

la belle-mère
lah bel-MEHR
la · family
mother-in-law, stepmother

la veuve
lah VUHV
la · family
widow

aimer
eh-MAY
verb
to love, to like

la clé
lah KLAY
la · home
key

à qui
ah KEE
question
whose, to whom

CORE IDEAS

The story. In the days of the judges, a famine drove Naomi's family from Bethlehem to Moab. Her husband and both sons died there, and she decided to go home. Her Moabite daughter-in-law Ruth refused to leave her: **Où tu iras j'irai … ton peuple sera**

mon peuple, et ton Dieu sera mon Dieu. Ruth gave up her own land and gods for Naomi's people and Naomi's God, and became the great-grandmother of King David and an ancestor of Christ.

How French works: the chart. my: mon (m.), ma (f.), mes (pl.); your (tu): ton, ta, tes; his/her: son, sa, ses; our: notre, notre, nos; your (vous): votre, votre, vos; their: leur, leur, leurs. So: **mon père, ma mère, mes parents; notre église, nos amis; leur maison, leurs enfants.**

How French works: agreement with the thing. The possessive agrees with what is owned. **Paul aime sa mère** (Paul loves his mother: sa because mère is feminine). **Marie aime son père** (Marie loves her father: son because père is masculine). Son livre can mean his book or her book; the sentence makes it clear.

How French works: before a vowel. Before a feminine word beginning with a vowel or silent h, use **mon, ton, son** instead of ma, ta, sa, to keep the sounds smooth: **mon amie, ton école, son histoire.** In Ruth 1:16, find them all: **ton peuple, mon peuple, ton Dieu, mon Dieu.**

ACTIVITY

À qui est-ce? (Whose is it?)

Play a lost-and-found game with possessives.

You will need

- A box of household objects belonging to different family members
- Index cards

Steps

1. Put ten objects in a box (a shoe, keys, a book, a hat, glasses ...).
2. Pull one out and ask: C'est ton livre? The person answers: Oui, c'est mon livre! or Non, c'est le livre de Papa. C'est son livre.
3. Write each answer on a card with the right possessive.
4. Finish with plural objects: Ce sont nos chaussures. Ce sont leurs clés.

Tips

- Play using vous and votre with a guest.
- Write a short paragraph about Ruth and Naomi with five possessives.

Check your work

☐ I used mon, ma, mes, son, sa and ses correctly.

☐ I used mon before a feminine vowel word.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the full possessive chart.
2. Write six sentences with son, sa or ses about people in your family.
3. Copy Ruth 1:16 from Où tu iras in French and English.

> **From history.** The book of Ruth is read in many churches at harvest time, because Ruth gleaned in the barley fields of Boaz; Millet painted Ruth and Boaz as French harvesters resting at noon.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can read the book of Ruth together in French over a week, one chapter a night.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Translate: his sister.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Sœur is feminine.
2. So sa, whatever the owner.

Answer: sa sœur.

Example 2. Translate: my friend (a girl).

▼ **Show solution**

1. Amie is feminine but begins with a vowel.
2. Use mon.

Answer: mon amie.

Example 3. Translate: their children.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Several children.
2. Leurs.

Answer: leurs enfants.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Write my with: père, mère, parents.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   mon père, ma mère, mes parents.

2. Easy Write our with: maison, amis.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   notre maison, nos amis.

3. Easy Translate: your (tu) brother.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   ton frère.

4. Medium Translate: Marie and her father.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Marie et son père.

5. Medium Translate: Paul and his mother.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Paul et sa mère.

6. Medium Translate: your (vous) books; their house.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   vos livres; leur maison.

7. Hard Translate: Ruth loves her mother-in-law and her God.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ruth aime sa belle-mère et son Dieu.

8. Hard Why does French say mon école and not ma école?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Before a feminine word beginning with a vowel, ma becomes mon to keep the sounds smooth.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Choosing son or sa by the owner, as in English. Choose by the thing owned: sa mère (his or her mother).
- Writing ma amie. Before a vowel, use mon: mon amie.
- Writing leur for several things. Use leurs: leurs enfants.

> **Make it a game · Possessive chain.** Sit in a circle. The first player names an object and an owner in English (Dad's car!). The next says it in French with a possessive (sa voiture!), then gives a new one. A slip means you must say the whole chart once before continuing.

> **Scripture.** “And Ruth said, Intreat me not to leave thee, or to return from following after thee: for whither thou goest, I will go; and where thou lodgest, I will lodge: thy people shall be my people, and thy God my God:” (Ruth 1:16, KJV)
>
> In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *ton peuple sera mon peuple, et ton Dieu sera mon Dieu* Ruth binds herself to Naomi, her people and her God. The French verse is full of possessives: ton peuple, mon peuple, ton Dieu, mon Dieu.

UNIT 4

L’École et l’Heure: Articles et Verbes en -er

Lesson 4.1 names the classroom and school subjects, teaches the definite and indefinite articles and the regular plural in -s (and -x), studies Geoffroy’s painting of little children at work in a French school, and reads Proverbs 1:7 in French. Lesson 4.2 teaches the largest family of French verbs, the regular -er verbs, with their endings (-e, -es, -e, -ons, -ez, -ent), most of them silent, and John 15:12.

Lesson 4.3 tells time (Quelle heure est-il? Il est trois heures et quart), names the days of the week and the months, and gives dates (le premier mai, le 25 décembre), with Psalm 55:17. The unit challenge is a school schedule presented in French.

PREREQUISITES

- Units 1–3.

MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can name twenty things and subjects at school with the right article.
- ☐ I can make regular plurals.
- ☐ I can conjugate any regular -er verb in the present tense.
- ☐ I can ask and tell the time.
- ☐ I can say the days, the months and the date.

OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **A Louis Segond 1910 Bible (print, or free online):** Bible Gateway lists it as Louis Segond (LSG). Used all year.
- **Index cards and a box:** For the flashcard deck that grows every lesson.
- **A paper plate, a brass fastener and a marker:** For a clock with moving hands (Lesson 4.3).

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

LESSONS IN THIS UNIT

4.1	**En Classe: School Words, Articles and Plurals**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
4.2	**Je Parle: Regular -er Verbs**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
4.3	**Quelle Heure Est-il? Time, Days and Months**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

Unit 4 test

Unit 4 test. Questions 1–2 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written. 50 points.

1. 5 pts
   Oral: Quelle heure est-il? (The parent shows five times on a clock: 3:00, 7:30, 10:15, 12:00 noon, 5:45.)

2. 5 pts
   Oral: Answer: Quel jour sommes-nous? Quelle est la date aujourd'hui? Quel est ton cours préféré?

3. 5 pts
   Write the definite article: ___ livre, ___ table, ___ école, ___ crayons, ___ histoire.

4. **5 pts**

   Make plural: un cahier, une règle, le tableau, l’élève, le bureau.

5. **5 pts**

   Conjugate parler in the present tense.

6. **5 pts**

   Complete: Nous (étudier) ___. Tu (aimer) ___ la musique. Elles (chanter) ___. Vous (écouter) ___. J’(habiter) ___ à Paris.

7. **5 pts**

   Translate: I like history but I do not like math.

8. **5 pts**

   Write in French: Monday, Wednesday, Sunday; July, December.

9. **5 pts**

   Write the date in French: May 1; December 25; Saturday, March 14.

10. **5 pts**

    Copy Proverbs 1:7 from La crainte to science, and translate.

ANSWER KEY

1. Il est trois heures. Il est sept heures et demie. Il est dix heures et quart. Il est midi. Il est six heures moins le quart.
2. Nous sommes ___. C'est le ___ ___. Mon cours préféré est ___ (le français, les maths …).
3. le, la, l', les, l'.
4. des cahiers, des règles, les tableaux, les élèves, les bureaux.
5. je parle, tu parles, il/elle/on parle, nous parlons, vous parlez, ils/elles parlent.
6. étudions; aimes; chantent; écoutez; habite.
7. J'aime l'histoire mais je n'aime pas les maths.
8. lundi, mercredi, dimanche; juillet, décembre.
9. le premier mai; le vingt-cinq décembre; samedi, le quatorze mars.
10. La crainte de l'Éternel est le commencement de la science. The fear of the LORD is the beginning of knowledge.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

UNIT CHALLENGE: MON EMPLOI DU TEMPS (MY SCHEDULE)

Make a weekly school schedule in French: the days across the top, the times down the side (8 h 00, 9 h 00 …), and each subject with its article. Then present your week aloud in at least ten sentences with times and -er verbs: Le lundi, à neuf heures, j'étudie les maths. À midi, nous mangeons. J'aime le mardi parce que …

LOOK FOR	WHAT IT MEANS
Days and times	Writes days and times correctly.
Subjects and articles	Uses at least eight subjects with correct articles.
-er verbs	Uses at least five -er verbs correctly.
Presentation	Speaks clearly in ten sentences.

4.1 En Classe: School Words, Articles and Plurals

OBJECTIVES

- Name twenty classroom objects and school subjects.
- Use the definite articles le, la, l’, les and the indefinite articles un, une, des.
- Form regular plurals with -s and -x.
- Read Proverbs 1:7 in French.

> **Warm-up.** Look around the room where you study. How many things can you already name in French? Today every pencil, book and desk gets its French name, and its le or la.

WATCH

School Words in French Part 1 (basic French vocabulary from Learn French With Alexa)

Learn French With Alexa · 6:07

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=qN6qQABYtdg

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the word list. Point to each object at home as Alexa names it.

Note: Learn French With Alexa: school words in French, part 1, about six minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

School Words in French Part 2 (basic French vocabulary from Learn French With Alexa)

Learn French With Alexa · 4:33

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=38qdGY6vXwY

Session 2 or 3: more school words.

KEY TERMS

l’article défini

The definite article: le, la, l’, les (the).

l’article indéfini

The indefinite article: un, une, des (a, an, some).

le pluriel

The plural: usually add a silent s; words in -eau and -eu add x.

la science

In the Louis Segond, science means knowledge.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

le livre

luh LEEVR

le · school

book

le cahier

luh kah-YAY

le · school

notebook

le crayon

luh kreh-YOHN

le · school

pencil

le stylo

luh stee-LOH

le · school

pen

la gomme

lah GUM

la · school

eraser

la règle

lah REHGL

la · school

ruler

le bureau

luh bew-ROH

le · school

desk

le tableau

luh tah-BLOH

le · school

board; painting

l'ordinateur

lor-dee-nah-TUHR

le · school

computer

l'élève

lay-LEHV

le / la · school

student, pupil

l’histoire
lees-TWAHR
la · school
history; story

la crainte
lah KRANT
la · faith
fear, reverence

CORE IDEAS

The story. King Solomon gathered his proverbs to teach his son wisdom, and he began with the foundation of all learning: **La crainte de l’Éternel est le commencement de la science**, The fear of the LORD is the beginning of knowledge. For centuries the schools of France were run by the Church, and Christian teachers such as Jean-Baptiste de La Salle, who founded the Brothers of the Christian Schools in 1680, taught poor children to read so that they could read the Scriptures.

How French works: the classroom. le livre (book), **le cahier** (notebook), **le crayon** (pencil), **le stylo** (pen), **la gomme** (eraser), **la règle** (ruler), **le bureau** (desk), **la chaise** (chair), **le tableau** (board), **la carte** (map), **le sac à dos** (backpack), **l’ordinateur** (m., computer), **le professeur** (teacher), **l’élève** (student). Subjects: **le français, les maths, l’histoire** (f.), **la géographie, les sciences, la musique, le latin.**

How French works: articles. The: **le** (m.), **la** (f.), **l’** (before a vowel or silent h), **les** (plural). A, some: **un** (m.), **une** (f.), **des** (plural). Learn every noun with its article, because the article tells you the gender: **le livre, la règle, l’école, les élèves; un crayon, une chaise, des cahiers.** French uses le, la, les for things in general: **J’aime les livres** (I like books).

How French works: plurals. Most nouns add an **s**, which is silent: **le livre → les livres.** You hear the plural in the article (le / les, un / des). Nouns in **-eau** and **-eu** add **x**: **le tableau → les tableaux, le bureau → les bureaux, le jeu → les jeux.** Nouns already ending in s, x or z do not change: **le bras → les bras.**

PICTURE STUDY



In Class, the Work of the Little Ones (En classe, le travail des petits), Jean Geoffroy, 1889 · Oil on canvas · Ministère de l'Éducation nationale, Paris

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Jean Geoffroy painted French schoolchildren again and again in the years after the laws of the 1880s made primary school free and required for every French child. He shows real children, not perfect ones: one boy leans on his elbow, another twists in his seat, a little girl stands to read her small book. This painting was shown at the Paris World's Fair of 1889 and belongs to the French ministry of education.

Look closely

- Count the children writing on slates and the children writing on paper.
- Find the teacher. What is she doing?
- Find the reading chart on the wall, the hats and the window.
- Name five things in French: le cahier, le crayon, le bureau, l'ardoise (slate), la fenêtre.

Talk about it

1. Which child would you be? Why?
2. Why did the Church, and later the nation, want every child to learn to read?

ACTIVITY

Étiquettes (labels)

Label your study space in French.

You will need

- Sticky notes
- A marker

Steps

1. Write twenty sticky notes with a classroom word and its article: le livre, la chaise, l'ordinateur …
2. Stick each note on the object; say it aloud every time you touch it this week.
3. Play Montre-moi (show me): the parent says Montre-moi la règle! and you point. Then switch roles.
4. Make the plurals: collect several of one thing and say Voici des crayons. Voici les crayons de ma sœur.

Tips

- Color-code the notes: one color for le words, another for la words.
- Add subjects on your book covers: le latin, l'histoire.

Check your work

☐ I labeled twenty objects with the right article.

☐ I made five plurals correctly.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the classroom words and subjects with their articles.
2. Copy the article chart and the plural rules with two examples each.
3. Copy Proverbs 1:7 in French and English.

> **From history.** The laws of Jules Ferry in 1881 and 1882 made primary school in France free, required and run by the state. Before that, many village schools were taught by priests, nuns and the Brothers of the Christian Schools.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can keep the sticky labels up for the whole unit and add new ones each lesson.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Write with le, la or l’: ordinateur, gomme, cahier.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Ordinateur begins with a vowel.
2. Gomme is feminine; cahier is masculine.

Answer: l’ordinateur, la gomme, le cahier.

Example 2. Make plural: le tableau, une règle.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Tableau adds x.
2. Une becomes des, règle adds s.

Answer: les tableaux, des règles.

Example 3. Translate: I like history and math.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Use the article for subjects in general.
2. Histoire is feminine and begins with h: l’.

Answer: J’aime l’histoire et les maths.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Give the French: book, pen, chair.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   le livre, le stylo, la chaise.

2. Easy Write the indefinite article: ___ crayon, ___ règle, ___ cahiers.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   un, une, des.

3. Easy What does l’élève mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The student (pupil).

4. Medium Make plural: le bureau, l’élève, le jeu.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   les bureaux, les élèves, les jeux.

5. Medium Write the definite article: ___ école, ___ musique, ___ latin.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   l’, la, le.

6. Medium Translate: There are some books on the desk.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Il y a des livres sur le bureau.

7. Hard Translate: The teacher has a map and the students have notebooks.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Le professeur a une carte et les élèves ont des cahiers.

8. Hard Translate Proverbs 1:7a into English: La crainte de l’Éternel est le commencement de la science.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The fear of the LORD is the beginning of knowledge.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Learning nouns without their articles. Always learn le livre, la règle, never just livre.
- Pronouncing the plural s: les livres sounds like le livre with lay. The s is silent.
- Writing le école. Before a vowel: l’école.

> **Make it a game · Kim’s game.** Put ten school objects on a tray and name them in French with their articles. The student looks for thirty seconds, then turns away while one object is removed. Turn back and say what is missing: Il manque la gomme! Play until every object has been taken.

> **Scripture.** “The fear of the LORD is the beginning of knowledge: but fools despise wisdom and instruction.” (Proverbs 1:7, KJV)
>
> In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *La crainte de l’Éternel est le commencement de la science* Solomon teaches that true learning begins with reverence for God. The Louis Segond translates knowledge as la science.

UNIT 4 · L’ÉCOLE ET L’HEURE: ARTICLES ET VERBES EN -ER · LESSON 4.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

4.2 Je Parle: Regular -er Verbs

OBJECTIVES

- Conjugate regular -er verbs in the present tense.
- Pronounce the silent endings correctly.
- Use twenty common -er verbs.
- Read John 15:12 in French.

> **Warm-up.** Nine out of ten French verbs end in -er, and they all follow one pattern. Learn one, and you know thousands. That is a good bargain.

WATCH

Group 1 Regular French Verbs ending in "ER" (Present Tense)

Learn French With Alexa · 8:58

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=j3gqgpxxtqI

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the chart. Conjugate each verb aloud with Alexa.

Note: Learn French With Alexa: regular French verbs ending in -er in the present tense, about nine minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Verbe parler (verbes en er - Présent de l'indicatif) - adjectifs possessifs - alain le lait

tialela99 · 1:37

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=pc7fnFdWNkk

Session 2 or 3: a short song-style drill of parler.

KEY TERMS

l'infinitif
The infinitive: the verb's name, as parler (to speak).

le radical
The stem: the infinitive minus -er (parl-).

la terminaison
The ending: -e, -es, -e, -ons, -ez, -ent.

le commandement
Commandment.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

parler
par-LAY
verb
to speak

aimer
eh-MAY
verb
to love, to like

chanter
shahn-TAY
verb
to sing

écouter
ay-koo-TAY
verb
to listen (to)

regarder
ruh-gar-DAY
verb
to watch, look at

travailler
trah-vah-YAY
verb
to work

étudier
ay-tew-DYAY
verb
to study

jouer
zhoo-AY
verb
to play

habiter
ah-bee-TAY
verb
to live (somewhere)

prier
pree-AY
verb
to pray

chercher
shehr-SHAY
verb
to look for

aider
eh-DAY
verb
to help

CORE IDEAS

The story. On the night before he died, Jesus washed his disciples' feet and gave them his last teaching. **C'est ici mon commandement: Aimez-vous les uns les autres, comme je vous ai aimés.** The verb aimer, to love, is a regular -er verb, and in this verse it appears twice: aimez (love!) and aimés (loved). The love he commands is measured by his own: as I have loved you.

How French works: the pattern. Take the infinitive, drop **-er** to find the stem, and add the endings: **parler → parl-: je parle, tu parles, il/elle/on parle, nous parlons,**

vous parlez, ils/elles parlent. The good news: **-e, -es, -e, -ent are all silent**, so four forms sound exactly alike (parl). Only **-ons** (ohn) and **-ez** (ay) are heard.

How French works: twenty verbs. aimer (to love, like), **parler** (speak), **chanter** (sing), **danser** (dance), **écouter** (listen to), **regarder** (watch, look at), **travailler** (work), **étudier** (study), **jouer** (play), **habiter** (live), **marcher** (walk), **donner** (give), **chercher** (look for), **trouver** (find), **prier** (pray), **penser** (think), **porter** (carry, wear), **arriver** (arrive), **rester** (stay), **aider** (help).

How French works: elision and liaison. Before a vowel or silent h, je becomes **j'**: **j'aime, j'écoute, j'habite.** With nous, vous, ils, elles, the s is pronounced z before a vowel: **nous aimons** (noo-zeh-MOHN), **ils écoutent** (eel-zay-KOOT). One present tense covers three English ones: **je parle** = I speak, I am speaking, I do speak. Negative: **Je ne parle pas anglais. Il n'aime pas danser.**

ACTIVITY

Verb charades

Act out -er verbs and conjugate them.

You will need

- Index cards
- A timer

Steps

1. Write the twenty -er verbs on cards.
2. One player draws a card and acts it out for thirty seconds; the others guess with a full sentence: Tu chantes! Vous dansez!
3. The actor answers: Oui, je chante! and writes the full chart of that verb on the back of the card.
4. At the end, read all twenty charts aloud as fast as you can without mistakes.

Tips

- Play in teams and use nous and vous: Nous jouons! Vous travaillez!
- Add negatives: Tu ne danses pas, tu marches!

Check your work

- ☐ I conjugated ten -er verbs correctly.
- ☐ I pronounced the silent endings correctly.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the chart of parler and mark the silent endings.
2. Copy the twenty -er verbs with their meanings.
3. Write ten sentences about your family with ten different -er verbs.
4. Copy John 15:12 in French and English.

> **From history.** English borrowed hundreds of -er verbs from French after 1066 through their Old French forms: chanter became chant, danser became dance, porter is behind porter and transport.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can describe the day at dinner with -er verbs in the present: Je travaille, tu étudies, nous chantons.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Conjugate chanter for nous and ils.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Stem chant-.
2. Add -ons and -ent.

Answer: nous chantons, ils chantent.

Example 2. Translate: I am listening to the music.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Écouter takes no word for to: écouter la musique.
2. J’ before a vowel.

Answer: J’écoute la musique.

Example 3. Make negative: Elle travaille le dimanche.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Ne … pas around the verb.

Answer: Elle ne travaille pas le dimanche.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Find the stem: parler, aimer, jouer.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   parl-, aim-, jou-.

2. Easy Give the ending for vous.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   -ez.

3. Easy Conjugate danser for je.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   je danse.

4. Medium Complete: Tu (regarder) ___. Nous (habiter) ___ ici. Elles (prier) ___.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   regardes; habitons; prient.

5. Medium Translate: We are studying French.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Nous étudions le français.

6. Medium Which forms of parler sound exactly alike?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   je parle, tu parles, il parle, ils parlent.

7. Hard Translate: My brothers do not like to dance, but they sing in church.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Mes frères n’aiment pas danser, mais ils chantent à l’église.

8. Hard Translate: Love one another, as I have loved you.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Aimez-vous les uns les autres, comme je vous ai aimés.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Pronouncing the -ent of ils parlent. It is silent: eel PARL.
- Writing je aime. Before a vowel: j’aime.
- Adding a word for at or to: je regarde à la télé. Regarder and écouter take a direct object: je regarde la télé.

> **Make it a game · Verb dice.** Number a die: 1 je, 2 tu, 3 il/elle, 4 nous, 5 vous, 6 ils/elles. The parent names an -er verb; the student rolls and conjugates it, then uses it in a sentence. A full sentence wins a point; first to ten wins.

> **Scripture.** “This is my commandment, That ye love one another, as I have loved you.” (John 15:12, KJV)
>
> In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *C’est ici mon commandement: Aimez-vous les uns les autres, comme je vous ai aimés.* Jesus gives his disciples his commandment of love. Aimer, the model -er verb, appears twice in the French: aimez and aimés.

UNIT 4 · L’ÉCOLE ET L’HEURE: ARTICLES ET VERBES EN -ER · LESSON 4.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

4.3 Quelle Heure Est-il? Time, Days and Months

OBJECTIVES

- Ask and tell the time, including et quart, et demie and moins le quart.
- Name the days of the week and the months.
- Say the date: le premier mai, le 25 décembre.
- Read Psalm 55:17 in French.

> **Warm-up.** In many French villages, the church bell still rings the Angelus three times a day: in the morning, at noon and in the evening, calling people to stop and pray. Today you learn to tell the time, and to keep it.

WATCH

Learn French: how to say the time in 5 minutes.

Learn French With Alexa · 5:43

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=k4aKWpm8_zk

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the time chart. Set a paper clock to each time Alexa says.

Note: Learn French With Alexa: how to say the time in five minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

The French Days of the Week (French Essentials Lesson 4)

Learn French With Alexa · 7:08

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=rim94Xp2XQ4

Session 2 or 3: the days of the week.

KEY TERMS

l’heure
The hour, the time (f.).

midi / minuit
Noon / midnight.

la semaine
The week.

le mois
The month.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

l’heure
LUHR
la · time
hour, time

et quart
ay KAHR
phrase
quarter past

et demie
ay duh-MEE
phrase
half past

moins le quart
mwan luh KAHR
phrase
quarter to

midi
mee-DEE
le · time
noon

minuit
mee-NWEE
le · time
midnight

le jour
luh ZHOOR
le · time
day

la semaine
lah suh-MEN
la · time
week

le mois
luh MWAH
le · time
month

dimanche
dee-MAHNSH
le · time
Sunday

le soir / le matin
luh SWAHR / luh mah-TAN
le · time
evening / morning

l'année
lah-NAY
la · time
year

CORE IDEAS

The story. King David, betrayed by a close friend, wrote: **Le soir, le matin, et à midi, je soupire et je gémis, Et il entendra ma voix**, Evening, and morning, and at noon, will I pray. Daniel in Babylon knelt three times a day toward Jerusalem, even when it meant the lions' den. Christians kept the same rhythm: monks prayed at set hours, and the Angelus bell still rings at about seven, noon and seven in many French villages.

How French works: telling time. Quelle heure est-il? What time is it? **Il est une heure. Il est deux heures. Il est trois heures cinq. Il est trois heures et quart** (3:15). **Il**

est trois heures et demie (3:30). After the half hour, count back from the next hour: **Il est quatre heures moins vingt** (3:40), **quatre heures moins le quart** (3:45). **Il est midi. Il est minuit.** At what time? **À quelle heure? À huit heures.**

How French works: the 24-hour clock. Timetables, schools and shops in France use it: **14 h 00** is **quatorze heures** (2:00 p.m.), **20 h 30** is **vingt heures trente**. In conversation you may also say **du matin, de l'après-midi, du soir**: **sept heures du soir** (7 p.m.).

How French works: days, months and dates. Days: **lundi, mardi, mercredi, jeudi, vendredi, samedi, dimanche** (the week begins on Monday). Months: **janvier, février, mars, avril, mai, juin, juillet, août, septembre, octobre, novembre, décembre.** No capital letters for either. Dates use le + number + month: **le 14 juillet, le 25 décembre**, but **le premier** for the first: **le premier janvier. Le lundi** means on Mondays (every Monday); **lundi** alone means this Monday.

ACTIVITY

L’horloge (the clock)

Make a clock and a calendar, and run your day in French.

You will need

- A paper plate, a brass fastener and a marker
- A calendar page

Steps

1. Make a paper clock with moving hands: numbers 1–12 and, in small numbers inside, 13–24.
2. Set the clock to ten times and say each: Il est neuf heures et quart.
3. Write your daily schedule in French with times: À sept heures, je prie. À huit heures, j’étudie …
4. Label a calendar page in French and mark five family birthdays and feasts: le 25 décembre, Noël.

Tips

- Ring a bell at noon and say the time and a short prayer in French.
- Use the 24-hour clock for your schedule.

Check your work

☐ I told ten times correctly.

☐ I wrote five dates correctly.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the time expressions with a small clock drawing for each.
2. Copy the days and the months.
3. Write your schedule for one day with five times.
4. Copy Psalm 55:17 in French and English.

From history. The French days are named after the Roman gods and the sky: lundi for the moon (lune), mardi for Mars, mercredi for Mercury, jeudi for Jupiter, vendredi for Venus. But dimanche comes from the Latin dies dominica, the Lord's day.

At home in French. French-speaking families can answer every time question in French this week, and say the date at breakfast.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Say 7:45 in French.

▼ **Show solution**

1. After the half hour, count back from eight.
2. Moins le quart.

Answer: Il est huit heures moins le quart.

Example 2. Write the date: July 14.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Le + number + month, no capital.

Answer: le quatorze juillet.

Example 3. Translate: On Sundays we sing at church at ten o'clock.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Le dimanche = on Sundays.
2. À dix heures.

Answer: Le dimanche, nous chantons à l'église à dix heures.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Say: It is two o'clock.

▼ **Show answer**

Il est deux heures.

2. Easy Name the days of the week in French.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   lundi, mardi, mercredi, jeudi, vendredi, samedi, dimanche.

3. Easy What does midi mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Noon.

4. Medium Say: 4:30, 6:15, 11:50.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Il est quatre heures et demie. Il est six heures et quart. Il est midi moins dix.

5. Medium Write: January 1; October 31.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   le premier janvier; le trente et un octobre.

6. Medium What time is 20 h 00?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   8:00 p.m.

7. Hard Translate: At what time do you (vous) eat? At half past twelve.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   À quelle heure mangez-vous? À midi et demi.

8. Hard Translate Psalm 55:17a: Le soir, le matin, et à midi, je soupire.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Evening, and morning, and at noon, I sigh (KJV: will I pray).

COMMON MISTAKES

- Capitalizing days and months. In French: lundi, janvier.
- Saying le un mai. The first is le premier: le premier mai.
- Saying trois heures et quarante-cinq in conversation. Say quatre heures moins le quart.

Make it a game · Quelle heure est-il, Monsieur le Loup?. A French version of What time is it, Mr. Wolf? The wolf stands with his back to the others, who call: Quelle heure est-il, Monsieur le Loup? He answers with a time (Il est trois heures!) and they take that many steps. When he answers Il est minuit!, he turns and chases them.

Scripture. "Evening, and morning, and at noon, will I pray, and cry aloud: and he shall hear my voice." (Psalm 55:17, KJV)

In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *Le soir, le matin, et à midi, je soupire et je gémis* (Psalm 55:18 in the Segond numbering, where the title counts as verse 1) David prays evening, morning and noon. The Louis Segond reads I sigh and groan, and he will hear my voice.

UNIT 5

À Table! La Nourriture et le Partitif

Lesson 5.1 names foods and drinks, the meals of the French day and the table setting, studies Monet's painting of his family at lunch, and reads Matthew 4:4 in French. Lesson 5.2 teaches the partitive article, which French needs whenever English says some or nothing at all (Je mange du pain: I eat bread), and how it changes after a negative and after words of quantity, with John 21:9.

Lesson 5.3 teaches the verb prendre and polite ordering with je voudrais, and the words of the café and restaurant, with Revelation 3:20, je souperai avec lui. The unit challenge is a French café, run at home, with a menu written in French.

PREREQUISITES

- Units 1–4.

MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can name forty foods and drinks with their articles.
- ☐ I can name the meals and set a table in French.
- ☐ I can choose between le, un and du correctly.
- ☐ I can use de after a negative and after words of quantity.
- ☐ I can conjugate prendre and order politely in a café.

OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **A Louis Segond 1910 Bible (print, or free online)**: Bible Gateway lists it as Louis Segond (LSG). Used all year.
- **Index cards and a box**: For the flashcard deck that grows every lesson.
- **Paper, markers, plates and simple food**: For the home café (Lesson 5.3 and the unit challenge).

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

LESSONS IN THIS UNIT

5.1	**Le Repas: Food, Drinks and Meals**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
5.2	**Du Pain et du Poisson: The Partitive**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
5.3	**Au Café: Prendre and Ordering Politely**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

Unit 5 test

Unit 5 test. Questions 1–2 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written. 50 points.

1. 5 pts

   Oral: The parent is a waiter: Bonjour! Vous désirez? Order a drink, a main dish and a dessert politely, then ask for the bill.

2. 5 pts

   Oral: Answer: Qu'est-ce que tu manges au petit-déjeuner? Qu'est-ce que tu aimes boire?

3. 5 pts

   Name the three meals of the French day.

4. 5 pts

   Give the French with its article: bread, cheese, water, apple, meat.

5. 5 pts

   Write the partitive: ___ pain, ___ soupe, ___ eau, ___ frites, ___ lait.

6. 5 pts

   Make negative: Je mange de la viande. Il boit du café. Nous avons des œufs.

7. 5 pts

   Translate: a kilo of apples, a glass of milk, a lot of bread.

8. 5 pts

   Conjugate prendre in the present tense.

9. 5 pts

   Why do we say J'aime le fromage but Je mange du fromage?

10. 5 pts

    Copy Matthew 4:4 from L'homme to seulement, and translate.

ANSWER KEY

1. Bonjour, monsieur / madame. Je voudrais un jus d'orange, le poulet avec des frites et une tarte aux pommes, s'il vous plaît. … L'addition, s'il vous plaît. (or similar)
2. Au petit-déjeuner, je mange du pain / des céréales / des œufs … J'aime boire de l'eau / du lait / du jus … (or similar)
3. le petit-déjeuner, le déjeuner, le dîner.
4. le pain, le fromage, l'eau (f.), la pomme, la viande.
5. du, de la, de l', des, du.
6. Je ne mange pas de viande. Il ne boit pas de café. Nous n'avons pas d'œufs.
7. un kilo de pommes, un verre de lait, beaucoup de pain.
8. je prends, tu prends, il/elle/on prend, nous prenons, vous prenez, ils/elles prennent.
9. After aimer (and other verbs of liking), French uses le, la, les for a thing in general; when eating or drinking some of it, French uses the partitive du, de la, des.
10. L'homme ne vivra pas de pain seulement. Man shall not live by bread alone.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

UNIT CHALLENGE: LE CAFÉ DE LA MAISON

Write a menu in French with at least four drinks, four main dishes and three desserts, with prices in euros. Set a table, then run the café for your family: one person is the waiter (Bonjour! Vous désirez?) and the others order with je voudrais and je prends. Switch roles, and finish with L'addition, s'il vous plaît. Record or present the scene.

LOOK FOR	WHAT IT MEANS
Menu	Writes eleven items with correct articles and prices.
Ordering	Uses je voudrais, je prends and s'il vous plaît correctly.
Partitive	Uses du, de la, des and de correctly in conversation.
Presentation	Speaks clearly and politely throughout.

UNIT 5 · À TABLE! LA NOURRITURE ET LE PARTITIF · LESSON 5.1 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

5.1 Le Repas: Food, Drinks and Meals

OBJECTIVES

- Name forty foods and drinks with their articles.
- Name the meals of the French day and the things on the table.
- Say what you like and do not like to eat.
- Read Matthew 4:4 in French.

> **Warm-up.** In France, lunch can last an hour and dinner even longer, and the family eats together at the table. What is on your table tonight? By the end of this lesson, you will be able to say it in French.

WATCH

Salty Food French (basic French vocabulary from Learn French With Alexa)

Learn French With Alexa · 6:03

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=fdHaXtRUYQs

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the word list. Repeat each word, then sort them into likes and dislikes.

Note: Learn French With Alexa: salty food in French, about six minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Sweet Food in French (basic French vocabulary from Learn French With Alexa)

Learn French With Alexa · 6:07

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ewOipmpGsmI

Session 2 or 3: sweet food words.

KEY TERMS

le repas
The meal.

le petit-déjeuner
Breakfast (literally, the little lunch).

le déjeuner
Lunch, the main midday meal.

le dîner
Dinner, the evening meal.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

le pain
luh PAN
le · food
bread

le fromage
luh froh-MAHZH
le · food
cheese

la viande
lah VYAHND
la · food
meat

le poisson
luh pwah-SOHN
le · food
fish

l'œuf
LUHF
le · food
egg

la pomme
lah PUM
la · food
apple

les légumes
lay lay-GEWM
les · food
vegetables

l'eau
LOH
la · food
water

le lait
luh LEH
le · food
milk

l'assiette
lah-SYET
la · table
plate

la fourchette
lah foor-SHET
la · table
fork

manger
mahn-ZHAY
verb
to eat

CORE IDEAS

The story. After his baptism, Jesus fasted forty days in the wilderness. The devil came and said: if you are the Son of God, command these stones to become bread. Jesus answered from Deuteronomy: **L'homme ne vivra pas de pain seulement, mais de toute parole qui sort de la bouche de Dieu.** Food is a good gift, and in this unit you will learn to name it with pleasure; but it is not the deepest hunger.

How French works: foods. le pain (bread), **le fromage** (cheese), **le beurre** (butter), **la viande** (meat), **le poulet** (chicken), **le poisson** (fish), **le jambon** (ham), **l'œuf** (m., egg), **la soupe**, **la salade**, **les pâtes** (pasta), **le riz** (rice), **les pommes de terre** (potatoes), **les**

frites (fries), **les légumes** (vegetables), **les haricots verts** (green beans), **la carotte**, **la tomate**; fruit: **la pomme** (apple), **la poire**, **la banane**, **l'orange** (f.), **la fraise** (strawberry), **le raisin** (grapes); sweets: **le gâteau** (cake), **la tarte**, **la glace** (ice cream), **le chocolat**.

How French works: drinks and the table. l'eau (f., water), **le lait** (milk), **le jus d'orange**, **le café**, **le thé**, **le chocolat chaud**, **le vin** (wine). The table: **l'assiette** (f., plate), **le verre** (glass), **la tasse** (cup), **le bol** (bowl), **la fourchette** (fork), **le couteau** (knife), **la cuillère** (spoon), **la serviette** (napkin), **la nappe** (tablecloth). Before eating: **Bon appétit!** At the table, keep both hands visible, on the table, as the French do.

How French works: likes and meals. With aimer, adorer, préférer and détester, use le, la, les for things in general: **J'aime le chocolat. Je n'aime pas les épinards** (spinach). **Je préfère la tarte aux pommes.** (Préférer changes its accent: je préfère, nous préférons.) Meals: **le petit-déjeuner** (bread, butter, jam, a bowl of hot chocolate), **le déjeuner** at noon, **le goûter** (after-school snack), **le dîner** at about eight. Manger (to eat) adds an e for nous: **nous mangeons.**

PICTURE STUDY



The Luncheon (Le Déjeuner), Claude Monet, 1868 · Oil on canvas · Städel Museum, Frankfurt

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Monet painted this at the time of his first great poverty, when he was too poor to keep his family fed, yet the painting is full of plenty and calm. The young mother is Camille, whom Monet later married, and the little boy is their son Jean; the place left empty at the table with the newspaper beside it is probably the painter's own. The jury of the Paris Salon rejected the painting in 1870; today it is one of the great treasures of the Städel Museum.

Look closely

- Name in French everything you can find on the table: le pain, les œufs, le vin, la nappe …
- Who is waiting for lunch, and whose place is empty?
- Find the lady at the window. Is she part of the family or a visitor?
- Find the doll on the floor. Whose is it?

Talk about it

1. What makes a family meal more than eating?
2. Why might a poor painter paint a full table?

ACTIVITY

Mettre la table (set the table)

Set the table and serve a meal in French.

You will need

- Plates, glasses, cutlery, napkins and a tablecloth
- Sticky notes

Steps

1. Set the table for your family, naming each thing aloud in French as you place it: l'assiette, la fourchette à gauche, le couteau à droite …
2. Label each food at the next meal with a sticky note in French.
3. At the meal, say Bon appétit! and ask for things politely: Passe-moi le pain, s'il te plaît.
4. After the meal, write five sentences: what you ate, what you liked and what you did not like.

Tips

- Make it a French-style meal: une entrée (starter), le plat principal, le fromage, le dessert.
- Say grace in French: Bénis, Seigneur, ce repas.

Check your work

☐ I named fifteen things on the table.

☐ I asked for food politely in French.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy forty food and drink words with their articles, sorted by group.
2. Draw a table setting and label it in French.
3. Write five sentences with aimer, préférer and détester.
4. Copy Matthew 4:4 in French and English.

> **From history.** The French meal was named part of the world's cultural heritage by UNESCO in 2010: the gastronomic meal of the French, with its courses, its table setting and its long conversation.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can name the food at one meal a day in French, starting with Bon appétit!

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Translate: I love chocolate but I hate spinach.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Adorer or aimer beaucoup, détester.
2. Le, les for things in general.

Answer: J'adore le chocolat mais je déteste les épinards.

Example 2. Name the four utensils in French: fork, knife, spoon, plate.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Learn them with their articles.

Answer: la fourchette, le couteau, la cuillère, l'assiette.

Example 3. Translate: We eat lunch at noon.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Manger adds e for nous.
2. Le déjeuner, à midi.

Answer: Nous mangeons le déjeuner à midi. (or Nous déjeunons à midi.)

PRACTICE

1. Easy Give the French: bread, milk, apple.

▼ **Show answer**

le pain, le lait, la pomme.

2. Easy Name the three meals.

▼ **Show answer**

le petit-déjeuner, le déjeuner, le dîner.

3. Easy What do you say before eating?

▼ **Show answer**

Bon appétit!

4. Medium Give the French with articles: cheese, water, egg, potatoes.

▼ **Show answer**

le fromage, l’eau, l’œuf, les pommes de terre.

5. Medium Translate: She prefers fish.

▼ **Show answer**

Elle préfère le poisson.

6. Medium Conjugate manger for je and nous.

▼ **Show answer**

je mange, nous mangeons.

7. Hard Translate: My father likes coffee but my mother prefers tea.

▼ **Show answer**

Mon père aime le café mais ma mère préfère le thé.

8. Hard Translate: Man shall not live by bread alone.

▼ **Show answer**

L’homme ne vivra pas de pain seulement.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Dropping the article: j’aime chocolat. French needs it: j’aime le chocolat.
- Writing nous mangons. Keep the soft g with an e: nous mangeons.
- Calling lunch le dîner. In France, le déjeuner is lunch and le dîner is the evening meal (in Quebec, le dîner is lunch and le souper is dinner).

Make it a game · Au marché (at the market). Memory chain: the first player says Au marché, j'achète du pain. The next repeats and adds one: Au marché, j'achète du pain et des pommes. Keep going around; whoever forgets or gets an article wrong is out. Do not worry yet about du and des: Lesson 5.2 explains them.

Scripture. "But he answered and said, It is written, Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God." (Matthew 4:4, KJV)

In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *L'homme ne vivra pas de pain seulement, mais de toute parole qui sort de la bouche de Dieu.* Jesus answers the tempter from Deuteronomy 8:3. The Word of God feeds the soul as bread feeds the body.

UNIT 5 · À TABLE! LA NOURRITURE ET LE PARTITIF · LESSON 5.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

5.2 Du Pain et du Poisson: The Partitive

OBJECTIVES

- Use the partitive articles du, de la, de l', des.
- Choose between le (in general), un (one) and du (some).
- Use de after a negative and after words of quantity.
- Read John 21:9 in French.

Warm-up. In English you can say I eat bread, with no article at all. French never allows that: it always needs a little word before the noun. Today you meet the one English lacks: du, de la, des, meaning some.

WATCH

French Partitive Articles: du, de la, des, de l', de, d'

Learn French With Alexa · 10:49

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=6edld_vN7VA

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the chart. Pause at each example and say why that article is used.

Note: Learn French With Alexa: French partitive articles du, de la, des, de l’, de, d’, about eleven minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Understanding French articles: when to use the DEFINITE, INDEFINITE and PARTITIVE articles

Learn French With Alexa · 7:40

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=CvkiPiW32hc

Session 2 or 3: when to use the definite, indefinite and partitive articles.

KEY TERMS

l’article partitif
The partitive article: du, de la, de l’, des, some or any of something.

la quantité
Quantity: beaucoup de, un peu de, un kilo de.

boire
To drink (irregular).

les charbons
Coals.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

du, de la, de l’, des
dew, duh lah, duhl, day
article
some, any

boire
BWAHR
verb
to drink

beaucoup de
boh-KOO duh
quantity
a lot of

un peu de
uhn PUH duh
quantity
a little

assez de
ah-SAY duh
quantity
enough

trop de
TROH duh
quantity
too much, too many

un verre de
uhn VEHR duh
quantity
a glass of

une bouteille de
ewn boo-TEY duh
quantity
a bottle of

le sucre
luh SEWKR
le · food
sugar

le beurre
luh BUHR
le · food
butter

la confiture
lah kohn-fee-TEWR
la · food
jam

acheter
ahsh-TAY
verb
to buy

CORE IDEAS

The story. After the resurrection, seven disciples fished all night on the Sea of Galilee and caught nothing. At dawn a man on the shore told them to cast the net on the right side, and it filled with 153 great fish. John said: It is the Lord. When they came ashore, **ils virent là des charbons allumés, du poisson dessus, et du pain**: they

saw a fire of coals, and fish laid thereon, and bread. The risen Christ had made them breakfast. The French says du poisson, du pain: some fish, some bread.

How French works: the partitive. For some or any of something that is not counted: **du** (m.: du pain), **de la** (f.: de la soupe), **de l'** (before a vowel: de l'eau), **des** (plural: des frites). English often leaves the word out, but French never does: **Je mange du pain.** I eat (some) bread. **Tu bois de l'eau?** Are you drinking (any) water?

How French works: le, un or du? Le for a thing in general or a particular thing: **J'aime le pain. Le pain est sur la table. Un** for one whole countable thing: **Je mange une pomme. Du** for an amount of something: **Je mange du pain.** So: **J'aime le fromage, alors je mange du fromage.** After aimer, adorer, préférer, détester: le. After manger, boire, prendre, acheter, vouloir, il y a: usually du.

How French works: when it becomes de. After a negative, du, de la, des (and un, une) become **de** (d'): **Je ne mange pas de viande. Il n'y a pas d'eau.** After words of quantity, use **de** alone: **beaucoup de pain** (a lot of), **un peu de sucre** (a little), **assez de lait** (enough), **trop de sel** (too much), **un verre d'eau, une tasse de thé, un kilo de pommes, une bouteille de lait.** Boire: **je bois, tu bois, il boit, nous buvons, vous buvez, ils boivent.**

ACTIVITY

La liste des courses (the shopping list)

Shop in French from a list you write.

You will need

- Paper and a pencil
- The kitchen, or a grocery trip

Steps

1. Look in the kitchen and write ten sentences: Il y a du lait. Il y a des œufs. Il n'y a pas de beurre.
2. Write a shopping list with quantities: un kilo de pommes, une bouteille de lait, un paquet de riz, six œufs.
3. Go shopping with a parent (or pretend), reading the list aloud in French.
4. At home, unpack and name each thing: Voici du pain. Voici des pommes. Voici une bouteille de lait.

Tips

- Plan a family meal and write the recipe ingredients with quantities in French.
- Compare prices in euros on a French supermarket website.

Check your work

☐ I wrote ten sentences with du, de la, des and pas de.

☐ I wrote five quantities with de.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the partitive chart with an example for each form.
2. Copy the three rules: le (in general), un (one), du (some).
3. Copy ten quantity words with examples.
4. Copy John 21:9 in French and English.

> **From history.** The fish is one of the oldest Christian symbols: the Greek word for fish, ichthus, spells the first letters of Jesus Christ, Son of God, Saviour. French Christians, like Christians everywhere, still draw it today.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can write the weekly shopping list in French and read it aloud at the store.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Complete: Je mange ___ soupe et je bois ___ eau.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Soupe is feminine.
2. Eau begins with a vowel.

Answer: de la; de l’.

Example 2. Make negative: Il y a du sucre.

▼ **Show solution**

1. After the negative, du becomes de.

Answer: Il n’y a pas de sucre.

Example 3. Translate: I like cheese, so I eat a lot of cheese.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Aimer + le.
2. Beaucoup de.

Answer: J’aime le fromage, alors je mange beaucoup de fromage.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Write the partitive: ___ pain, ___ viande, ___ eau.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   du, de la, de l’.

2. Easy Write the partitive: ___ frites, ___ lait.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   des, du.

3. Easy Conjugate boire for je and nous.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   je bois, nous buvons.

4. Medium Make negative: Nous avons du pain.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Nous n’avons pas de pain.

5. Medium Translate: a glass of milk; a little sugar.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   un verre de lait; un peu de sucre.

6. Medium Le, une or du? Elle adore ___ chocolat. Je mange ___ banane. Il boit ___ café.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   le; une; du.

7. Hard Translate: There is bread, but there is no butter.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Il y a du pain, mais il n’y a pas de beurre.

8. Hard Translate: They saw a fire of coals there, and fish on it, and bread.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ils virent là des charbons allumés, du poisson dessus, et du pain.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Leaving out the article as in English: je mange pain. Say je mange du pain.
- Keeping du after a negative: je ne mange pas du pain. Say pas de pain.
- Writing beaucoup du pain. After quantities, de alone: beaucoup de pain.

Make it a game · Qu'est-ce qu'il y a dans le frigo?. One player secretly looks in the refrigerator (or a picture of one). The others ask yes-or-no questions: Il y a du lait? Il y a de la confiture? The player answers Oui, il y a du lait or Non, il n'y a pas de lait. Ten questions, and then guess the strangest thing inside.

Scripture. "As soon then as they were come to land, they saw a fire of coals there, and fish laid thereon, and bread." (John 21:9, KJV)

In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *ils virent là des charbons allumés, du poisson dessus, et du pain* The risen Jesus prepares breakfast on the shore for his tired disciples. The French says du poisson and du pain: some fish, some bread.

UNIT 5 · À TABLE! LA NOURRITURE ET LE PARTITIF · LESSON 5.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

5.3 Au Café: Prendre and Ordering Politely

OBJECTIVES

- Conjugate prendre (and apprendre, comprendre).
- Order politely with je voudrais and je prends.
- Use the words of the café and restaurant, and prices in euros.
- Read Revelation 3:20 in French.

Warm-up. Le Procope, the oldest café in Paris, opened in 1686 and still serves meals today. Imagine sitting down there: the waiter comes and says Bonjour! Vous désirez? What do you answer? Today you learn.

WATCH

22 phrases to use in a FRENCH RESTAURANT

Learn French With Alexa · 6:16

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=HthNRc0qmrk

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the dialogue. Play the customer while Alexa plays the waiter.

Note: Learn French With Alexa: twenty-two phrases to use in a French restaurant, about six minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

PRENDRE in the Present Tense - Mastering French Verbs

Learn French with FrenchPod101.com · 2:26

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=8bQr1r-nYtQ

Session 2 or 3: a short drill of prendre.

KEY TERMS

prendre
To take; with food and drink, to have: Je prends un café.

je voudrais
I would like: the polite way to order.

l'addition
The bill, the check (f.).

souper
To have supper (in the Louis Segond).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

prendre
PRAHNDR
verb
to take, to have (food)

apprendre
ah-PRAHNDR
verb
to learn

comprendre
kohm-PRAHNDR
verb
to understand

je voudrais
zhuh voo-DREH
phrase
I would like

la carte
lah KART
la · café
menu

l'entrée
lahn-TRAY
la · café
starter

le plat principal
luh PLAH pran-see-PAHL
le · café
main course

le serveur
luh sehr-VUHR
le · café
waiter (la serveuse: waitress)

l'addition
lah-dee-SYOHN
la · café
the bill

l'euro
luh-ROH
le · money
euro

combien
kohm-BYAN
question
how much, how many

la porte
lah PORT
la · home
door

CORE IDEAS

The story. To the lukewarm church of Laodicea, rich and proud and blind to its need, the risen Christ sent a warning and an invitation: **Voici, je me tiens à la porte, et je frappe. Si quelqu'un entend ma voix et ouvre la porte, j'entrerai chez lui, je souperai avec lui, et lui avec moi.** In the East, to share a meal is to share friendship. The Lord of glory asks to sit at our table.

How French works: prendre. je prends, tu prends, il/elle/on prend, nous prenons, vous prenez, ils/elles prennent (note the double n). With food and drink it means to have: **Je prends le poulet. Qu'est-ce que tu prends?** It also means to take: **Nous**

prenons le bus. Two cousins follow the same pattern: **apprendre** (to learn: j'apprends le français) and **comprendre** (to understand: je ne comprends pas).

How French works: ordering. The waiter: **Bonjour! Vous désirez?** or **Qu'est-ce que vous prenez?** You: **Je voudrais un croque-monsieur, s'il vous plaît.** or **Je prends la soupe du jour.** Je voudrais is much more polite than je veux (I want). Useful: **la carte** (the menu), **le menu** (the set meal), **l'entrée** (starter), **le plat principal** (main course), **le dessert**, **une carafe d'eau** (free tap water), **L'addition, s'il vous plaît.** Call the waiter **Monsieur** or **Madame**, never garçon.

How French works: prices. France uses **l'euro** (€), divided into 100 **centimes**. **C'est combien?** How much is it? **Ça fait combien?** How much does it come to? **Ça fait douze euros cinquante** (€12.50). The French write a comma for the decimal point: 12,50 €. Service is included in French bills; leaving a little extra is a kindness, not a duty.

ACTIVITY

Le Café de la Maison: rehearsal

Write a menu and practice ordering for the unit challenge.

You will need

- Paper and markers
- Plates and a simple snack

Steps

1. Write a small menu in French with prices in euros: three drinks, three dishes, two desserts.
2. Practice the dialogue with a parent: the waiter greets and asks, you order with je voudrais, the waiter repeats the order, and you ask for the bill.
3. Switch roles: you are the waiter, and use vous and Qu'est-ce que vous prenez?
4. Add one problem: the waiter brings the wrong dish, and you say politely: Excusez-moi, j'ai commandé le poulet, pas le poisson.

Tips

- Serve a real snack and say the bill in euros.
- Write the dialogue down as a short play.

Check your work

☐ I ordered three things politely.

☐ I conjugated prendre correctly.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the chart of prendre, apprendre and comprendre.
2. Copy the waiter's questions and the customer's answers.
3. Write your menu with prices.
4. Copy Revelation 3:20 in French and English.

> **From history.** Many French café dishes have stories: the croque-monsieur (toasted ham and cheese sandwich) first appeared on a Paris café menu in 1910, and the croissant, which came from Vienna, became French in the 1800s.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can run the home café once this week, with a menu in French and euros on paper.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Order politely: I would like a hot chocolate, please.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Je voudrais.
2. S’il vous plaît to a waiter.

Answer: Je voudrais un chocolat chaud, s’il vous plaît.

Example 2. Conjugate prendre for nous and ils.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Nous: one n.
2. Ils: double n.

Answer: nous prenons, ils prennent.

Example 3. Write €8.50 in French.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Euros, then centimes.
2. Comma for the decimal point.

Answer: huit euros cinquante (8,50 €).

PRACTICE

1. Easy Conjugate prendre for je and vous.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   je prends, vous prenez.

2. Easy How do you ask for the bill?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   L’addition, s’il vous plaît.

3. Easy What does la carte mean in a restaurant?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The menu.

4. Medium Translate: I do not understand.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Je ne comprends pas.

5. Medium Translate: What are you (vous) having?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Qu’est-ce que vous prenez?

6. Medium Translate: We are learning French.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Nous apprenons le français.

7. Hard Translate: My parents are having the fish, and I would like the chicken with fries.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Mes parents prennent le poisson, et je voudrais le poulet avec des frites.

8. Hard Translate: Behold, I stand at the door, and knock.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Voici, je me tiens à la porte, et je frappe.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Writing ils prenent. Ils prennent has a double n.

- Ordering with je veux. It sounds rude; say je voudrais.
- Calling the waiter garçon. Say Monsieur or Madame.

> **Make it a game · Le serveur distrait (the absent-minded waiter).** The parent plays a waiter who gets every order wrong. The student orders three things; the waiter brings (names) something else. The student must correct him politely each time: Excusez-moi, monsieur, je voudrais du thé, pas du café. Three polite corrections win.

> **Scripture.** "Behold, I stand at the door, and knock: if any man hear my voice, and open the door, I will come in to him, and will sup with him, and he with me." (Revelation 3:20, KJV)
>
> In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *Voici, je me tiens à la porte, et je frappe.* Christ knocks at the door of a proud and lukewarm church and offers to share a meal with anyone who opens. The Louis Segond says je souperai avec lui: I will have supper with him.

UNIT 6

En Ville: Aller et le Futur Proche

Lesson 6.1 names the buildings and shops of a French town, teaches the prepositions of place (devant, derrière, à côté de, en face de) and the contractions du and des, studies Pissarro's view of a Paris boulevard in spring, and reads Matthew 5:14 in French. Lesson 6.2 conjugates aller and teaches à with the article (au, à la, à l', aux) and the ways of travel (à pied, en voiture), with Psalm 122:1.

Lesson 6.3 teaches the near future, aller + infinitive (Je vais visiter Paris: I am going to visit Paris), and asking and giving directions, with John 14:2, Je vais vous préparer une place. The unit challenge is a map of your town with a guided tour in French. The midterm exam on Units 1–6 comes at the end of week 18.

PREREQUISITES

- Units 1–5.

MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can name twenty places in a town.
- ☐ I can say where something is with ten prepositions of place.
- ☐ I can conjugate aller and use au, à la, à l', aux.
- ☐ I can say what I am going to do with the near future.
- ☐ I can ask for and give simple directions.

OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **A Louis Segond 1910 Bible (print, or free online)**: Bible Gateway lists it as Louis Segond (LSG). Used all year.
- **Index cards and a box**: For the flashcard deck that grows every lesson.
- **Large paper and markers**: For the town map (unit challenge).

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

LESSONS IN THIS UNIT

6.1	**La Ville: Places and Prepositions**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
6.2	**Je Vais à l'Église: The Verb Aller**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
6.3	**Je Vais Visiter: The Near Future and Directions**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

Unit 6 test

Unit 6 test. Questions 1–2 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written. 50 points.

1. **5 pts**

   Oral: The parent asks: Pardon, où est la boulangerie? Using a simple map, give directions in three steps.

2. **5 pts**

   Oral: Answer: Qu’est-ce que tu vas faire ce week-end? (three sentences in the near future)

3. **5 pts**

   Give the French: the train station, the town hall, the bakery, the library, the post office.

4. **5 pts**

   Translate: in front of the church; next to the bank; across from the park; between the café and the school; far from the station.

5. **5 pts**

   Conjugate aller in the present tense.

6. **5 pts**

   Complete with au, à la, à l’ or aux: Je vais ___ marché, ___ piscine, ___ hôpital, ___ magasins, ___ église.

7. **5 pts**

   Translate: We are going to visit the museum.

8. **5 pts**

   Make negative: Il va travailler demain.

9. **5 pts**

   Describe Pissarro’s painting in two French sentences.

10. **5 pts**

    Copy John 14:2 from Je vais to place, and translate.

ANSWER KEY

1. Allez tout droit, puis tournez à gauche. La boulangerie est à côté de la poste, en face de l'église. (or similar)
2. Samedi, je vais jouer au parc. Dimanche, je vais aller à l'église. Je vais manger avec ma famille. (or similar)
3. la gare, la mairie, la boulangerie, la bibliothèque, la poste.
4. devant l'église; à côté de la banque; en face du parc; entre le café et l'école; loin de la gare.
5. je vais, tu vas, il/elle/on va, nous allons, vous allez, ils/elles vont.
6. au, à la, à l', aux, à l'.
7. Nous allons visiter le musée.
8. Il ne va pas travailler demain.
9. C'est un grand boulevard à Paris au printemps. Il y a des arbres, des voitures à cheval et beaucoup de gens. (or similar)
10. Je vais vous préparer une place. I go to prepare a place for you.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

UNIT CHALLENGE: MA VILLE (MY TOWN)

Draw a map of your town or neighborhood with at least ten places labeled in French. Then give a guided tour aloud in at least twelve sentences, using prepositions of place, aller with au, à la, aux, and the near future: Voici l'église. Elle est en face de la mairie. Après, nous allons aller à la boulangerie … End with a sentence about where you would take a French visitor first and why.

LOOK FOR	WHAT IT MEANS
Places	Labels ten places correctly with articles.
Prepositions	Uses at least five prepositions of place correctly.
Aller and the near future	Conjugates aller and uses au, à la, aux and aller + infinitive correctly.
Presentation	Speaks clearly in twelve sentences.

6.1 La Ville: Places and Prepositions

OBJECTIVES

- Name twenty places and shops in a town.
- Say where things are with ten prepositions of place.
- Contract de with le and les: du, des.
- Read Matthew 5:14 in French.

> **Warm-up.** Almost every old French town has the same heart: a church with a tall steeple, a square in front of it, a town hall, a bakery and a café. Can you picture it? Today you learn to name it and find your way around it.

WATCH

Learn French - City Buildings Vocabulary

Learn French with FrenchPod101.com · 2:42

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=OAh2LCGzQ1k

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the word list. Repeat each building, then point to it on the town drawing.

Note: FrenchPod101: city buildings vocabulary, about two and a half minutes.

KEY TERMS

la ville
The town or city; le village is a village.

le magasin
The shop, the store.

la préposition
A word of place: devant, derrière, entre.

située
Situated, located (feminine).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

l'église
lay-GLEEZ
la · town
church

la mairie
lah meh-REE
la · town
town hall

la gare
lah GAHR
la · town
train station

la poste
lah POST
la · town
post office

la bibliothèque
lah bee-blee-oh-TEK
la · town
library

la boulangerie
lah boo-lahnzh-REE
la · town
bakery

la place
lah PLAHS
la · town
square

la rue
lah REW
la · town
street

devant / derrière
duh-VAHN / deh-RYEHR
preposition
in front of / behind

à côté de
ah koh-TAY duh
preposition
next to

en face de
ahn FAHS duh
preposition
across from

la lumière
lah lew-MYEHR
la · faith
light

CORE IDEAS

The story. On a hillside in Galilee, Jesus told his disciples who they were: **Vous êtes la lumière du monde. Une ville située sur une montagne ne peut être cachée.** In the hill country of Galilee, travelers could see towns built on the heights from far away, and at night their lamps shone in the dark. So many French towns stand: Vézelay, Laon and Le Puy-en-Velay rise on their hills with their churches on top, seen for miles around.

How French works: the town. l'église (f., church), **la cathédrale**, **la place** (square), **la mairie** (town hall), **la poste** (post office), **la gare** (train station), **la banque**, **l'hôpital** (m.), **l'école** (f.), **la bibliothèque** (library), **le musée**, **le parc**, **le marché** (market), **la rue** (street), **le pont** (bridge). Shops: **la boulangerie** (bakery), **la boucherie** (butcher), **la pharmacie**, **l'épicerie** (f., grocery), **le supermarché**, **la librairie** (bookshop: not a library!), **le café**, **le restaurant**.

How French works: prepositions of place. dans (in), **sur** (on), **sous** (under), **devant** (in front of), **derrière** (behind), **entre** (between), **à côté de** (next to), **en face de** (across from), **près de** (near), **loin de** (far from), **au coin de** (at the corner of). **Où est la poste? Elle est devant la gare.** To ask where: **Où est ...? Où sont ...?**

How French works: de + the article. When de meets le or les, they join: **de + le = du**, **de + les = des**. De la and de l' do not change. **La pharmacie est à côté du café. La banque est en face de la mairie. Le parc est près de l'école. La gare est loin des magasins.** This is the same du you met in Unit 5, but here it means of the: à côté du café, next to (of) the café.

PICTURE STUDY



Boulevard Montmartre, Spring, Camille Pissarro, 1897 · Oil on canvas · Private collection

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

In 1897 Pissarro, then in his sixties and troubled by an eye disease that made it hard to paint outdoors, rented a room in the Hôtel de Russie and painted the boulevard from his window again and again: in morning and afternoon, sun and rain, winter and spring, by day and by night. He painted about fourteen views of the same street. This spring view shows the new leaves just opening on the trees, painted with hundreds of small quick touches of color.

Look closely

- Where was the painter standing? How can you tell?
- Find the street lamp, the kiosks and the carriages.
- What season is it? How do you know?
- Describe the scene in French: Il y a des arbres, des voitures à cheval, des gens, des immeubles …

Talk about it

1. Why would a painter paint the same street fourteen times?
2. What would you see from the highest window in your town?

ACTIVITY

Le village en carton (the cardboard village)

Build a small French town and describe it.

You will need

- Small boxes or blocks
- Paper, markers and tape

Steps

1. Make ten buildings from boxes or blocks and label each in French: l'église, la mairie, la boulangerie ...
2. Arrange them around a square (la place), with the church at the center.
3. Describe the town in ten sentences with prepositions: La boulangerie est à côté du café. La mairie est en face de l'église.
4. Play Où est ...?: the parent asks, you answer with a preposition.

Tips

- Hide a small toy and give its position: Le chat est derrière la gare!
- Draw the town as a map for the unit challenge.

Check your work

☐ I named ten buildings.

☐ I used six prepositions and du correctly.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy twenty places and shops with their articles.
2. Copy the prepositions of place with a little drawing for each.
3. Copy the rule de + le = du, de + les = des with two examples each.
4. Copy Matthew 5:14 in French and English.

> **From history.** For over a thousand years French towns grew around the parish church and its square; Paris itself grew from the Île de la Cité, where the cathedral of Notre-Dame stands, burned in 2019 and reopened in December 2024.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can name the places on every errand in French this week: Nous allons à la poste! (You will learn aller in the next lesson.)

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Translate: The pharmacy is next to the bakery.

▼ **Show solution**

1. À côté de.
2. De la does not change.

Answer: La pharmacie est à côté de la boulangerie.

Example 2. Translate: The bank is across from the market.

▼ **Show solution**

1. En face de + le marché = en face du marché.

Answer: La banque est en face du marché.

Example 3. Translate: The school is far from the shops.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Loin de + les magasins = loin des magasins.

Answer: L'école est loin des magasins.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Give the French: church, station, library.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   l'église, la gare, la bibliothèque.

2. Easy What is the difference between la librairie and la bibliothèque?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   La librairie is a bookshop; la bibliothèque is a library.

3. Easy Give the French: in front of, behind, between.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   devant, derrière, entre.

4. Medium Complete: Le café est à côté ___ musée. (du / de la)

   ▼ **Show answer**

   du.

5. Medium Complete: La poste est près ___ église. (du / de l’)

   ▼ **Show answer**

   de l’.

6. Medium Translate: Where is the town hall?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Où est la mairie?

7. Hard Translate: The park is between the hospital and the station, across from the shops.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Le parc est entre l’hôpital et la gare, en face des magasins.

8. Hard Translate: You are the light of the world. A city that is set on a hill cannot be hid.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Vous êtes la lumière du monde. Une ville située sur une montagne ne peut être cachée.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Writing à côté de le café. Contract: à côté du café.
- Using librairie for library. A library is une bibliothèque; une librairie sells books.
- Forgetting de: à côté la banque. Say à côté de la banque.

Make it a game · Où est le trésor?. One player hides a coin in a room. The other asks yes-or-no questions with prepositions: Est-ce qu'il est sous la table? Est-ce qu'il est derrière le livre? The hider answers Oui or Non, il n'est pas sous la table. Find it in ten questions to win.

Scripture. "Ye are the light of the world. A city that is set on an hill cannot be hid." (Matthew 5:14, KJV)

In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *Vous êtes la lumière du monde. Une ville située sur une montagne ne peut être cachée* In the Sermon on the Mount, Jesus calls his disciples the light of the world, like a city on a hill that cannot be hidden.

UNIT 6 · EN VILLE: ALLER ET LE FUTUR PROCHE · LESSON 6.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

6.2 Je Vais à l'Église: The Verb Aller

OBJECTIVES

- Conjugate aller in the present tense.
- Use à with the article: au, à la, à l', aux.
- Say how you travel: à pied, à vélo, en voiture, en train.
- Read Psalm 122:1 in French.

Warm-up. Three times a year, the families of Israel walked up to Jerusalem for the feasts, singing psalms on the road. Where does your family go together every week? Today you learn the verb for going.

WATCH

Aller (to go) — Present Tense (French verbs conjugated by Learn French With Alexa)

Learn French With Alexa · 6:51

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Ru9pCQDV1eE

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the chart. Conjugate aller with Alexa until you can say it without looking.

Note: Learn French With Alexa: aller (to go) in the present tense, about seven minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Aller (to go) + prepositions (French Essentials Lesson 11)

Learn French With Alexa · 10:08

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2oB5kR7CH8M

Session 2 or 3: aller with prepositions (au, à la, en).

KEY TERMS

aller
To go (irregular).

au / aux
À + le = au; à + les = aux (to the, at the).

à pied
On foot.

le cantique
Song, hymn: the Psalms of Ascent are cantiques des degrés.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

aller
ah-LAY
verb
to go

au / aux
OH
preposition
to the, at the

chez
SHAY
preposition
at the house of

à pied
ah PYAY
phrase
on foot

à vélo
ah vay-LOH
phrase
by bike

en voiture
ahn vwah-TEWR
phrase
by car

en train
ahn TRAN
phrase
by train

en avion
ahn-nah-VYOHN
phrase
by plane

où
OO
question
where

la joie
lah ZHWAH
la · faith
joy

la maison
lah meh-ZOHN
la · home
house, home

le voyage
luh vwah-YAHZH
le · travel
journey, trip

CORE IDEAS

The story. Psalms 120 to 134 are the Songs of Degrees, or of Ascents, sung by pilgrims climbing the road to Jerusalem for the feasts. Psalm 122 begins with joy: **Je suis dans la joie quand on me dit: Allons à la maison de l'Éternel!** I was glad when they said unto me, Let us go into the house of the LORD. Allons is aller in the nous form: Let us go!

How French works: aller. je vais, tu vas, il/elle/on va, nous allons, vous allez, ils/elles vont. It is the most irregular verb in French: only nous and vous look like

the infinitive. Questions: **Où vas-tu? Où allez-vous?** Commands: **Va! Allons! Allez!** Allez is also what French crowds shout to cheer a team on: **Allez, les Bleus!**

How French works: à + the article. To or at a place is **à**, and it joins with le and les: **à + le = au, à + les = aux**; à la and à l' do not change. **Je vais au marché, à la poste, à l'église, aux magasins.** For cities, use à alone: **Je vais à Paris, à Québec.** For most countries: **en France, au Canada, aux États-Unis.** To someone's house: **chez: Je vais chez ma grand-mère.**

How French works: getting there. à pied (on foot), **à vélo** (by bike), **à cheval** (on horseback); **en voiture** (by car), **en bus**, **en train**, **en avion** (by plane), **en bateau** (by boat). Rule of thumb: **à** if you sit on it, **en** if you sit in it. **Le dimanche, nous allons à l'église en voiture. Je vais à l'école à pied.**

ACTIVITY

Le voyage (the journey)

Plan a pilgrimage across France and tell it with aller.

You will need

- A map of France
- Paper and a pencil

Steps

1. Choose five places to visit: Paris, Chartres, Mont-Saint-Michel, Lyon, Lourdes, Strasbourg …
2. Write the route with aller and the means of travel: Lundi, nous allons à Chartres en train. Mardi, nous allons au Mont-Saint-Michel en voiture.
3. Add one thing to visit in each place, with au, à la, à l’ or aux: À Paris, nous allons au musée du Louvre.
4. Present the journey aloud with the map.

Tips

- Add family members going different ways: Mon frère va à vélo, mais mes parents vont en voiture.
- Find each town’s cathedral or famous church.

Check your work

☐ I conjugated aller in all six forms.

☐ I used au, à la, à l’ and aux correctly.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the chart of aller.
2. Copy the rule à + le = au, à + les = aux with examples.
3. Copy the means of travel with à and en.
4. Copy Psalm 122:1 in French and English.

> **From history.** For centuries French pilgrims walked to Santiago de Compostela in Spain along the roads that start at Paris, Vézelay, Le Puy-en-Velay and Arles, marked by the scallop shell. Thousands still walk them every year.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can announce every outing in French this week: Nous allons au supermarché en voiture!

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Complete: Nous ___ (aller) ___ (to the) parc.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Nous allons.
2. À + le parc = au parc.

Answer: Nous allons au parc.

Example 2. Translate: They go to school by bus.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Ils vont.
2. En bus.

Answer: Ils vont à l'école en bus.

Example 3. Translate: I am going to my aunt's house.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Chez + person.

Answer: Je vais chez ma tante.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Conjugate aller for je, tu and il.

▼ **Show answer**

je vais, tu vas, il va.

2. Easy Write à + le and à + les.

▼ **Show answer**

au, aux.

3. Easy Translate: on foot; by car.

▼ **Show answer**

à pied; en voiture.

4. Medium Complete: Elle va ___ boulangerie, ___ hôpital, ___ magasins.

▼ **Show answer**

à la, à l’, aux.

5. Medium Translate: Where are you (vous) going?

▼ **Show answer**

Où allez-vous?

6. Medium Translate: We are going to Canada by plane.

▼ **Show answer**

Nous allons au Canada en avion.

7. Hard Translate: On Sundays my family goes to church, then to my grandparents’ house.

▼ **Show answer**

Le dimanche, ma famille va à l’église, puis chez mes grands-parents.

8. Hard Translate: I was glad when they said unto me, Let us go into the house of the LORD.

▼ **Show answer**

Je suis dans la joie quand on me dit: Allons à la maison de l’Éternel!

COMMON MISTAKES

- Writing à le marché. Contract: au marché.
- Saying je vais à la maison de ma tante. French prefers chez ma tante.
- Saying en pied or à voiture. It is à pied and en voiture.

Make it a game · Où vas-tu?. The parent names a thing you need (I need bread! I need a stamp! I need a book!). The student answers with aller and the place: Je vais à la boulangerie! Je vais à la poste! Je vais à la bibliothèque! Ten right answers in a row wins.

Scripture. "A Song of degrees of David. I was glad when they said unto me, Let us go into the house of the LORD." (Psalm 122:1, KJV)

In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *Je suis dans la joie quand on me dit: Allons à la maison de l'Éternel!* A Song of Degrees, sung by pilgrims going up to Jerusalem. Allons is the nous command form of aller: Let us go!

UNIT 6 · EN VILLE: ALLER ET LE FUTUR PROCHE · LESSON 6.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

6.3 Je Vais Visiter: The Near Future and Directions

OBJECTIVES

- Form the near future with aller + infinitive.
- Make the near future negative: Je ne vais pas travailler.
- Ask for and give directions in the street.
- Read John 14:2 in French.

Warm-up. What are you going to do tomorrow? In French, you can answer with a verb you already know. Aller does double duty: it takes you places, and it takes you into the future.

WATCH

Learn French: know the futur proche with Aller under 5 minutes.

Learn French With Alexa · 4:34

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=S80DXgd-i2s

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the explanation. Say three things you are going to do this week.

Note: Learn French With Alexa: the near future (futur proche) with aller, in under five minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

21 French phrases to do with "ASKING DIRECTIONS"

Learn French With Alexa · 8:04

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=9DPiY2dt0Cc

Session 2 or 3: phrases for asking directions.

KEY TERMS

le futur proche
The near future: aller + infinitive.

tout droit
Straight ahead.

tourner
To turn.

la demeure
Dwelling place, mansion (in John 14:2).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

demain
duh-MAN
adverb
tomorrow

ce soir
suh SWAHR
phrase
tonight

prochain(e)
proh-SHAN / proh-SHEN
adjective
next

tout droit
too DRWAH
phrase
straight ahead

à gauche
ah GOHSH
phrase
to the left

à droite
ah DRWAHT
phrase
to the right

tourner
toor-NAY
verb
to turn

traverser
trah-vehr-SAY
verb
to cross

le pont
luh POHN
le · town
bridge

préparer
pray-pah-RAY
verb
to prepare

la demeure
lah duh-MUHR
la · faith
dwelling place, mansion

visiter
vee-zee-TAY
verb
to visit (a place)

CORE IDEAS

The story. On the night before the cross, the disciples were troubled: Jesus had told them he was going away. He comforted them: **Il y a plusieurs demeures dans la maison de mon Père. Si cela n'était pas, je vous l'aurais dit. Je vais vous préparer une place.** In my Father's house are many mansions … I go to prepare a place for you. Je vais préparer is the near future: I am going to prepare. He promised to come again and take them to himself.

How French works: the near future. Use the present of aller + an infinitive: **je vais manger** (I am going to eat), **tu vas étudier, il va pleuvoir** (it is going to rain), **nous**

allons visiter Paris, vous allez voir, ils vont arriver. Time words: **demain** (tomorrow), **ce soir** (tonight), **ce week-end**, **la semaine prochaine** (next week), **l'année prochaine** (next year).

How French works: negatives and pronouns. Ne … pas goes around aller, not the infinitive: **Je ne vais pas travailler demain.** Little object words go before the infinitive: **Je vais vous préparer une place**, I am going to prepare a place for you. Questions: **Qu'est-ce que tu vas faire? Vas-tu venir?**

How French works: directions. Ask politely: **Pardon, madame, où est la gare, s'il vous plaît?** or **Pour aller à la gare, s'il vous plaît?** Answers use the vous command: **Allez tout droit** (go straight ahead), **Tournez à gauche / à droite** (turn left / right), **Prenez la deuxième rue à droite** (take the second street on the right), **Traversez le pont** (cross the bridge), **continuez jusqu'à la place** (continue as far as the square). **C'est à cinq minutes à pied.** Thank them: **Merci beaucoup!**

ACTIVITY

Le guide (the tour guide)

Give a tour of your town in the near future, and practice directions.

You will need

- Your town map from Lesson 6.1, or a new drawing
- A small toy figure

Steps

1. Plan a tour for a visitor: write six sentences in the near future: D'abord, nous allons visiter l'église. Ensuite, nous allons manger au café …
2. With the map, ask your parent for directions: Pardon, monsieur, pour aller à la bibliothèque?
3. The parent gives directions in French; move the toy figure along the map as you listen.
4. Switch roles and give directions yourself, using tout droit, à gauche, à droite and the second street.

Tips

- Give directions in your real neighborhood on a walk.
- Write next week's plans for your whole family in the near future.

Check your work

☐ I wrote six sentences in the near future.

☐ I gave directions with four expressions.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the near future rule with six examples, one for each person.
2. Copy the time words for the future.
3. Copy the direction phrases with an arrow for each.
4. Copy John 14:2 in French and English.

> **From history.** Paris is measured from a bronze star set in the pavement in front of Notre-Dame Cathedral, called Point Zéro: road distances from Paris to every town in France are counted from it.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can announce tomorrow's plans at dinner in the near future: Demain, nous allons …

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Translate: We are going to eat at the restaurant tonight.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Nous allons + manger.
2. Ce soir.

Answer: Nous allons manger au restaurant ce soir.

Example 2. Make negative: Elle va travailler demain.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Ne … pas around va.

Answer: Elle ne va pas travailler demain.

Example 3. Give directions: Go straight ahead, then turn left.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Vous commands: allez, tournez.

Answer: Allez tout droit, puis tournez à gauche.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Translate: I am going to study.

▼ **Show answer**

Je vais étudier.

2. Easy What does tout droit mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Straight ahead.

3. Easy Translate: tomorrow; next week.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   demain; la semaine prochaine.

4. Medium Write in the near future: Ils visitent le musée.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ils vont visiter le musée.

5. Medium Translate: It is going to rain.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Il va pleuvoir.

6. Medium Translate: Take the second street on the right.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Prenez la deuxième rue à droite.

7. Hard Translate: My parents are not going to visit Paris next year.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Mes parents ne vont pas visiter Paris l'année prochaine.

8. Hard Translate: In my Father's house are many mansions. I go to prepare a place for you.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Il y a plusieurs demeures dans la maison de mon Père. Je vais vous préparer une place.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Conjugating both verbs: je vais mange. Only aller changes; the second verb stays in the infinitive: je vais manger.
- Putting pas after the infinitive: je vais manger pas. Say je ne vais pas manger.
- Confusing à droite (to the right) with tout droit (straight ahead).

Make it a game · Le robot. One player is a robot; the other guides it across the room to a hidden treasure using only French directions: Avance! (go forward), Tourne à gauche! Tourne à droite! Arrête! (stop). The robot does exactly what it is told, even into the sofa. Switch roles.

Scripture. "In my Father's house are many mansions: if it were not so, I would have told you. I go to prepare a place for you." (John 14:2, KJV)

In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *Je vais vous préparer une place.* Jesus comforts his troubled disciples with the promise of a place in his Father's house. Je vais préparer is the near future.

UNIT 7

Le Corps et les Vêtements

Lesson 7.1 names the parts of the body and the face, teaches avoir mal à (j'ai mal à la tête) and a visit to the doctor, and reads 1 Corinthians 12:12 in French. Lesson 7.2 names clothes and colors, teaches how colors agree (une robe verte, des chaussures noires) and the verb porter (to wear), studies Renoir's crowded Paris street in the rain, and reads Colossians 3:12.

Lesson 7.3 goes shopping: Je cherche un pull. Quelle taille? Ça coûte combien? It teaches the demonstratives ce, cet, cette, ces and the short adjectives that come before the noun (beauty, age, goodness, size: une belle robe, un vieux manteau), with Proverbs 31:25. The unit challenge is a fashion show of real clothes, described in French.

PREREQUISITES

- Units 1–6.

MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can name twenty parts of the body and say where it hurts.
- ☐ I can name twenty clothes and describe them with colors that agree.
- ☐ I can conjugate porter and say what someone is wearing.
- ☐ I can use ce, cet, cette, ces.
- ☐ I can place adjectives before or after the noun correctly.

OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **A Louis Segond 1910 Bible (print, or free online)**: Bible Gateway lists it as Louis Segond (LSG). Used all year.
- **Index cards and a box**: For the flashcard deck that grows every lesson.
- **Clothes from the closet and a long mirror**: For the fashion show (unit challenge).

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

LESSONS IN THIS UNIT

7.1	**Le Corps: The Body and Avoir Mal**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
7.2	**Les Vêtements: Clothes, Colors and Porter**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
7.3	**Au Magasin: Ce, Cette and Adjectives Before the Noun**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

Unit 7 test

Unit 7 test. Questions 1–2 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written. 50 points.

1. 5 pts

   Oral: Describe what you are wearing today in four sentences, with colors.

2. 5 pts

   Oral: The parent is a doctor: Qu'est-ce qui ne va pas? Say where it hurts and for how long.

3. 5 pts

   Give the French with the article: head, eyes, hand, foot, mouth.

4. 5 pts

   Translate with avoir mal à: My back hurts. His feet hurt. I have an earache.

5. 5 pts

   Give the French: a dress, a coat, shoes, a hat, a shirt.

6. 5 pts

   Make the color agree: une jupe (vert); des chaussures (noir); une chemise (blanc); des pantalons (gris); une veste (marron).

7. 5 pts

   Write ce, cet, cette or ces: ___ pull, ___ robe, ___ anorak, ___ chaussures, ___ homme.

8. 5 pts

   Translate: a beautiful red dress; an old black coat; a big new house.

9. 5 pts

   Conjugate porter in the present tense.

10. 5 pts

    Copy 1 Corinthians 12:12 from comme le corps to membres, and translate.

ANSWER KEY

1. Aujourd'hui, je porte un pantalon bleu, une chemise blanche, un pull gris et des chaussures noires. (or similar)
2. J'ai mal à la tête et j'ai mal à la gorge. J'ai mal depuis deux jours. (or similar)
3. la tête, les yeux, la main, le pied, la bouche.
4. J'ai mal au dos. Il a mal aux pieds. J'ai mal à l'oreille (aux oreilles).
5. une robe, un manteau, des chaussures, un chapeau, une chemise.
6. verte; noires; blanche; gris; marron.
7. ce, cette, cet, ces, cet.
8. une belle robe rouge; un vieux manteau noir; une grande maison neuve (une grande nouvelle maison).
9. je porte, tu portes, il/elle/on porte, nous portons, vous portez, ils/elles portent.
10. comme le corps est un et a plusieurs membres. As the body is one, and hath many members.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

UNIT CHALLENGE: LE DÉFILÉ DE MODE (THE FASHION SHOW)

Choose three outfits from the closet, for church, for school and for the snow. Put each on and walk the runway while a family member, or you yourself, describes it in French: Voici Pierre. Il porte un beau manteau bleu, une écharpe rouge et des bottes noires. C'est parfait pour l'hiver! Write the three descriptions, at least five sentences each, with colors, adjectives and ce, cette, ces.

LOOK FOR	WHAT IT MEANS
Clothes and colors	Names fifteen clothes with colors that agree.
Adjectives	Places beau, grand, vieux, nouveau before the noun correctly.
Demonstratives and porter	Uses porter and ce, cet, cette, ces correctly.
Presentation	Speaks clearly and with good humor.

7.1 Le Corps: The Body and Avoir Mal

OBJECTIVES

- Name twenty parts of the body and face.
- Say where it hurts with avoir mal à.
- Talk with a doctor: Qu'est-ce qui ne va pas? J'ai mal depuis deux jours.
- Read 1 Corinthians 12:12 in French.

> **Warm-up.** Play Jacques a dit (Simon says) in French without knowing the words: the parent points and says the word, you touch it. How many can you guess? Today you learn them all.

WATCH

Body Vocabulary in French Part 1 (basic French vocabulary from Learn French With Alexa)

Learn French With Alexa · 9:08

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=UNCEy-g8qEM

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the word list. Touch each part of your body as Alexa names it.

Note: Learn French With Alexa: body vocabulary in French, part 1, about nine minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Learn French - Body Parts Vocabulary

Learn French with FrenchPod101.com · 2:42

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vWqdJ97Oxt8

Session 2 or 3: a short review of body parts.

KEY TERMS

le corps

The body.

avoir mal à

To hurt, to have a pain in: j'ai mal à la tête.

le membre

Limb; member (of a body or a church).

depuis

Since, for (with a present-tense verb).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

la tête
lah TET

la · body

head

les yeux
lay-ZYUH

les · body

eyes

la bouche
lah BOOSH

la · body

mouth

le nez
luh NAY

le · body

nose

l'oreille
loh-REY

la · body

ear

la main
lah MAN

la · body

hand

le bras
luh BRAH

le · body

arm

la jambe
lah ZHAHMB

la · body

leg

le pied

luh PYAY

le · body

foot

le dos

luh DOH

le · body

back

le médecin

luh mayd-SAN

le · health

doctor

malade

mah-LAHD

adjective

sick

CORE IDEAS

The story. The church in Corinth was quarreling over which spiritual gifts were greatest. Paul answered with a picture everyone could understand: **comme le corps est un et a plusieurs membres … ainsi en est-il de Christ.** The eye cannot say to the hand, I have no need of thee. Every member is needed, the weak ones most of all, and when one member suffers, all the members suffer with it.

How French works: the body. la tête (head), **les cheveux** (hair), **le visage** (face), **les yeux** (eyes; one eye is **un œil**), **le nez** (nose), **la bouche** (mouth), **les dents** (f., teeth), **l'oreille** (f., ear), **le cou** (neck), **la gorge** (throat), **l'épaule** (f., shoulder), **le bras** (arm), **la main** (hand), **le doigt** (finger), **le dos** (back), **le ventre** (stomach), **la jambe** (leg), **le genou** (knee; plural **les genoux**), **le pied** (foot), **le cœur** (heart).

How French works: avoir mal à. To say something hurts, use **avoir mal à** + the body part, with the same contractions as aller: **J'ai mal à la tête** (I have a headache), **J'ai mal au dos** (à + le = au), **J'ai mal à l'oreille, Il a mal aux dents** (à + les = aux). With body parts French uses the article, not the possessive: **Je lève la main**, I raise my hand. **Elle a les yeux bleus**, she has blue eyes.

How French works: at the doctor. le médecin (the doctor) asks: **Qu'est-ce qui ne va pas?** (What is wrong?) **Où avez-vous mal?** You answer: **J'ai mal au ventre. J'ai de la fièvre** (a fever). **Je tousse** (I am coughing). **Je suis malade** (I am sick). For how long: **depuis** + present tense: **J'ai mal à la gorge depuis trois jours**, my throat has hurt for three days. Wish the sick well: **Bon rétablissement!**

ACTIVITY

Jacques a dit (Simon says)

Play the classic game and draw a labeled body.

You will need

- Large paper or a roll of brown paper
- Markers

Steps

1. Lie down on a long piece of paper and have someone trace your outline.
2. Label twenty parts of the body in French with their articles.
3. Play Jacques a dit: Jacques a dit: touchez la tête! Touchez le nez! (No Jacques a dit: do not move!)
4. Take turns playing doctor and patient, using avoir mal à, depuis and Bon rétablissement!

Tips

- Label the face separately with eyes, eyebrows (les sourcils), lips (les lèvres) and cheeks (les joues).
- Write a short scene at the doctor’s office.

Check your work

☐ I labeled twenty body parts.

☐ I used avoir mal à with au, à la, à l’ and aux.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy twenty body words with their articles; draw a figure and label it.
2. Copy avoir mal à with an example for each contraction.
3. Copy the doctor’s questions and five answers.
4. Copy 1 Corinthians 12:12 in French and English.

> **From history.** In 1816 the French doctor René Laennec, a devout Catholic, invented the stethoscope in Paris: he rolled a sheet of paper into a tube to listen to a patient's heart. The name comes from Greek for chest and look.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can play Jacques a dit for five minutes after dinner this week.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Translate: My knees hurt.

▼ **Show solution**

1. À + les genoux = aux genoux.

Answer: J'ai mal aux genoux.

Example 2. Translate: She has brown hair and green eyes.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Avoir + les cheveux, les yeux.
2. Colors agree: verts.

Answer: Elle a les cheveux bruns et les yeux verts.

Example 3. Translate: I have had a sore throat for two days.

▼ **Show solution**

1. French uses the present with depuis.

Answer: J'ai mal à la gorge depuis deux jours.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Give the French: head, hand, foot.

▼ **Show answer**

la tête, la main, le pied.

2. Easy What is the singular of les yeux?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   un œil.

3. Easy Translate: I have a headache.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   J’ai mal à la tête.

4. Medium Translate: He has a stomachache.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Il a mal au ventre.

5. Medium Translate: My ears hurt.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   J’ai mal aux oreilles.

6. Medium What does the doctor mean: Qu’est-ce qui ne va pas?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   What is wrong? (What is the matter?)

7. Hard Translate: I am sick: I have a fever and I have been coughing for three days.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Je suis malade: j’ai de la fièvre et je tousse depuis trois jours.

8. Hard Translate: For as the body is one, and hath many members.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Car, comme le corps est un et a plusieurs membres.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Writing mes yeux sont bleus to describe. French prefers j’ai les yeux bleus.
- Writing j’ai mal à le dos. Contract: au dos.
- Using the past tense with depuis: j’ai eu mal depuis. Use the present: j’ai mal depuis.

Make it a game · Jacques a dit. The leader gives commands: Jacques a dit: touchez les épaules! Levez la main droite! Fermez les yeux! Obey only when the command begins with Jacques a dit. Whoever moves without it is out. The last player standing becomes Jacques.

Scripture. "For as the body is one, and hath many members, and all the members of that one body, being many, are one body: so also is Christ." (1 Corinthians 12:12, KJV)

In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *comme le corps est un et a plusieurs membres* Paul compares the church to a body with many members and one life in Christ.

UNIT 7 · LE CORPS ET LES VÊTEMENTS · LESSON 7.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

7.2 Les Vêtements: Clothes, Colors and Porter

OBJECTIVES

- Name twenty items of clothing.
- Use colors after the noun, with agreement.
- Conjugate porter (to wear) and describe what people are wearing.
- Read Colossians 3:12 in French.

Warm-up. Paris has been called the capital of fashion for three hundred years. But what you wear matters less than how you wear it, and Paul tells us what to put on first. Today: clothes, colors, and the clothes of the soul.

WATCH

Clothes Vocabulary in French Part 1 (basic French vocabulary from Learn French With Alexa)

Learn French With Alexa · 6:57

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=rRJ0tCmOVfA

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the word list. Hold up each piece of clothing you own as Alexa names it.

Note: Learn French With Alexa: clothes vocabulary in French, part 1, about seven minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Weekly French Words with Lya - Colors

Learn French with FrenchPod101.com · 1:57

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=eKHFyBnwPtw

Session 2 or 3: a quick review of the colors.

KEY TERMS

les vêtements
Clothes (m. pl.).

porter
To wear; also to carry.

revêtir
To clothe, put on (in Colossians 3:12: revêtez-vous).

invariable
Never changing: marron and orange never add e or s.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

la chemise
lah shuh-MEEZ
la · clothes
shirt

le pantalon
luh pahn-tah-LOHN
le · clothes
trousers

la robe
lah ROHB
la · clothes
dress

la jupe
lah ZHEWP
la · clothes
skirt

le manteau
luh mahn-TOH
le · clothes
coat

le pull
luh PEWL
le · clothes
sweater

les chaussures
lay shoh-SEWR
les · clothes
shoes

le chapeau
luh shah-POH
le · clothes
hat

le parapluie
luh pah-rah-PLWEE
le · clothes
umbrella

porter
por-TAY
verb
to wear, to carry

blanc / blanche
BLAHN / BLAHNSH
adjective
white

marron
mah-ROHN
adjective
brown (invariable)

CORE IDEAS

The story. Writing from prison, Paul told the Christians of Colossae to take off the old life like dirty clothes, anger, malice and lies, and to dress in a new way: **Ainsi donc, comme des élus de Dieu, saints et bien-aimés, revêtez-vous d'entrailles de miséricorde, de bonté, d'humilité, de douceur, de patience.** Put on therefore, as the elect of God, holy and beloved, bowels of mercies, kindness, humbleness of mind, meekness, longsuffering. And over all these, love, which is the bond of perfectness.

How French works: clothes. la chemise (shirt), **le tee-shirt**, **le pull** (sweater), **le pantalon** (trousers: singular in French!), **le jean**, **le short**, **la jupe** (skirt), **la robe**

(dress), **la veste** (jacket), **le manteau** (coat), **l'imperméable** (m., raincoat), **le costume** (suit), **la cravate** (tie), **le chapeau** (hat), **la casquette** (cap), **l'écharpe** (f., scarf), **les gants** (m., gloves), **les chaussettes** (f., socks), **les chaussures** (f., shoes), **les bottes** (f., boots), **le parapluie** (umbrella).

How French works: colors. Colors come after the noun and agree like other adjectives: **un pull vert, une jupe verte, des gants verts, des robes vertes. blanc → blanche**, **violet → violette**, **gris → grise**; colors ending in e do not change for feminine: **rouge, jaune, rose, beige. Marron** (brown) and **orange** never change: **des chaussures marron.** For hair, brown is **brun**: les cheveux bruns.

How French works: porter. Porter is a regular -er verb: **je porte, tu portes, il porte, nous portons, vous portez, ils portent. Qu'est-ce que tu portes aujourd'hui? Je porte un jean bleu et un pull rouge. Le dimanche, mon père porte un costume gris et une cravate.** It also means to carry: **Elle porte un panier**, she is carrying a basket.

PICTURE STUDY



The Umbrellas (Les Parapluies), Pierre-Auguste Renoir, about 1881–1886 · Oil on canvas · National Gallery, London (shared with the Hugh Lane Gallery, Dublin)

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Renoir painted this picture in two stages, several years apart. The mother and children on the right, with their soft feathery brushstrokes, were painted around 1881; the young woman on the left, painted in sharper, harder lines, was added around 1885, and her dress follows the fashion of that later year. The woman with the hatbox is probably a milliner, a hatmaker carrying her work through the rain, and the gentleman seems to be offering her his umbrella.

Look closely

- Count the umbrellas you can see.
- Which woman carries the box? What might be inside?
- Find the hoop and the stick. What did children do with them?
- Describe three people in French: La petite fille porte un chapeau … L'homme porte …

Talk about it

1. Why does the young woman have no umbrella and no hat?
2. Is the gentleman being kind, or just polite? What is the difference?

ACTIVITY

Habille la poupée (dress the figure)

Dress a paper figure and describe the outfits.

You will need

- Paper, scissors and colored pencils
- Your body outline from Lesson 7.1, or a new drawing

Steps

1. Draw and color ten paper clothes to fit a paper figure: a coat, a dress, trousers, a hat …
2. Dress the figure for four occasions: l'école, l'église, la neige, la plage.
3. For each, write and say three sentences with porter and colors: Il porte un manteau noir et une écharpe rouge.
4. Look out the window and describe what three people are wearing.

Tips

- Describe what each family member is wearing at dinner.
- Write the clothes that go with the virtues of Colossians 3:12: which is the coat, which the scarf?

Check your work

☐ I named fifteen clothes.

☐ I made colors agree, with marron and orange unchanged.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy twenty clothes with their articles.
2. Copy the colors in all four forms (m., f., m. pl., f. pl.).
3. Write five sentences about what your family is wearing.
4. Copy Colossians 3:12 in French and English.

> **From history.** Louis XIV made France the center of European fashion in the 1600s, and the first fashion magazines appeared in Paris. The words chic, boutique, couture, beige and lingerie came into English from French.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can describe one another's clothes at breakfast in French each morning this week.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Translate: a white shirt and black shoes.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Blanc → blanche (f.).
2. Noir → noires (f. pl.).

Answer: une chemise blanche et des chaussures noires.

Example 2. Translate: She is wearing brown boots.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Marron never changes.

Answer: Elle porte des bottes marron.

Example 3. Translate: We are wearing our coats.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Nous portons.
2. Nos manteaux.

Answer: Nous portons nos manteaux.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Give the French: dress, coat, hat.

▼ **Show answer**

la robe, le manteau, le chapeau.

2. Easy Conjugate porter for je and vous.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   je porte, vous portez.

3. Easy Give the feminine of blanc and vert.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   blanche, verte.

4. Medium Translate: a blue skirt; green gloves.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   une jupe bleue; des gants verts.

5. Medium Translate: orange socks.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   des chaussettes orange.

6. Medium Translate: My father wears a suit and a tie on Sundays.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Mon père porte un costume et une cravate le dimanche.

7. Hard Translate: The little girls are wearing white hats and gray coats.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Les petites filles portent des chapeaux blancs et des manteaux gris.

8. Hard Translate: Put on therefore, as the elect of God, holy and beloved … kindness, humbleness of mind.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ainsi donc, comme des élus de Dieu, saints et bien-aimés, revêtez-vous … de bonté, d’humilité.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Putting the color first: une verte robe. Colors follow the noun: une robe verte.
- Writing des chaussures marrons. Marron never changes.
- Saying des pantalons for one pair of trousers. One pair is un pantalon.

Make it a game · Qui est-ce? (who is it?). One player secretly picks someone in the room or in a picture. The others ask yes-or-no questions about clothes: Il porte un pull rouge? Elle porte des lunettes? The first to guess the person in fewer than ten questions wins.

Scripture. "Put on therefore, as the elect of God, holy and beloved, bowels of mercies, kindness, humbleness of mind, meekness, longsuffering;" (Colossians 3:12, KJV)

In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *revêtez-vous d'entrailles de miséricorde, de bonté, d'humilité, de douceur, de patience* Paul tells the believers to clothe themselves in mercy, kindness, humility, meekness and patience. Revêtez-vous means clothe yourselves.

UNIT 7 · LE CORPS ET LES VÊTEMENTS · LESSON 7.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

7.3 Au Magasin: Ce, Cette and Adjectives Before the Noun

OBJECTIVES

- Shop for clothes in French: size, price, trying on.
- Use the demonstratives ce, cet, cette, ces.
- Place beau, nouveau, vieux, grand, petit, bon and other short adjectives before the noun.
- Read Proverbs 31:25 in French.

Warm-up. You are in a little shop in Paris and you love a sweater in the window. How do you ask to try it on, what size you need, and how much it costs? Today you go shopping.

WATCH

16 French phrases to use in a "CLOTHES SHOP"

Learn French With Alexa · 5:59

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=i8upu9xg4mA

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the dialogue. Play the customer while Alexa plays the shopkeeper.

Note: Learn French With Alexa: sixteen French phrases to use in a clothes shop, about six minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

French adjectives: BEFORE or AFTER the noun?

Learn French With Alexa · 7:06

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=I1RUF472SFY

Session 2 or 3: which adjectives go before the noun and which after.

KEY TERMS

ce, cet, cette, ces
This, that, these, those: the demonstrative adjectives.

la taille
Size (of clothes); la pointure for shoes.

essayer
To try on, to try.

BAGS
Beauty, Age, Goodness, Size: adjectives that usually go before the noun.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

ce, cet, cette, ces
SUH, SET, SET, SAY
demonstrative
this, that, these, those

beau / belle
BOH / BEL
adjective
beautiful, handsome

nouveau / nouvelle
noo-VOH / noo-VEL
adjective
new

vieux / vieille
VYUH / VYEY
adjective
old

bon / bonne
BOHN / BUN
adjective
good

la taille
lah TIGH
la · shop
size

essayer
eh-seh-YAY
verb
to try (on)

coûter
koo-TAY
verb
to cost

cher / chère
SHEHR
adjective
expensive; dear

chercher
shehr-SHAY
verb
to look for

la force
lah FORS
la · faith
strength

la gloire
lah GLWAHR
la · faith
glory, honour

CORE IDEAS

The story. Proverbs ends with a poem about the virtuous woman, whose price is far above rubies. She works wool and flax with her hands, makes fine linen and sells it to the merchants, and clothes her household in scarlet against the snow. But her best garment is not of cloth: **Elle est revêtue de force et de gloire, Et elle se rit de l'avenir.** Strength and honour are her clothing; and she shall rejoice in time to come.

How French works: ce, cet, cette, ces. This or that: **ce** (m.: ce pull), **cet** (m. before a vowel or silent h: cet anorak, cet homme), **cette** (f.: cette robe), **ces** (plural: ces

chaussures). To be exact, add **-ci** (this here) or **-là** (that there): **Je préfère cette robe-ci, pas cette robe-là.**

How French works: adjectives before the noun. Most adjectives follow the noun (une robe rouge, un garçon intelligent), but a few short, common ones go before: remember **BAGS**: Beauty (**beau, joli**), Age (**jeune, vieux, nouveau**), Goodness (**bon, mauvais**), Size (**grand, petit, gros**). **une belle robe, un vieux manteau, un bon livre, une petite maison.** Three are irregular: **beau, belle; nouveau, nouvelle; vieux, vieille**, with special forms before a masculine vowel: **un bel homme, un nouvel ami, un vieil arbre.**

How French works: in the shop. The shopkeeper: **Bonjour! Je peux vous aider?** You: **Je cherche un pull, s'il vous plaît. Quelle taille faites-vous?** (What size are you?) **Je fais du 38. Je peux l'essayer?** (May I try it on?) **Où sont les cabines?** (fitting rooms). Then: **Il est trop grand / trop petit. Il me va bien** (it fits me well). **Ça coûte combien? Il coûte trente euros. C'est trop cher!** (too expensive) or **Je le prends.** (I will take it.)

ACTIVITY

La boutique

Run a clothes shop at home and practice buying.

You will need

- Clothes from the closet with paper price tags
- Paper money in euros

Steps

1. Set up a shop: hang or lay out ten pieces of clothing with price tags in euros.
2. One person is the shopkeeper; the other comes in, greets, says what he or she is looking for, asks the size and the price, and tries something on.
3. Use ce, cette and ces when you point: Combien coûte cette chemise? J'aime ces chaussures!
4. Describe one item with a BAGS adjective and a color: C'est un beau manteau noir.

Tips

- Write the scene as a short play with two characters.
- Add a problem: the size is wrong and you need another.

Check your work

☐ I used ce, cet, cette and ces correctly.

☐ I placed beau, grand, petit and nouveau before the noun.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the demonstrative chart with examples.
2. Copy the BAGS adjectives, with the forms of beau, nouveau and vieux.
3. Copy the shop dialogue.
4. Copy Proverbs 31:25 in French and English.

> **From history.** In France, shop sales are set by law: two national sale seasons, les soldes, one in winter and one in summer, when shops may sell goods below cost. Shoppers line up on the first morning.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can play shop with real prices in euros, and use ce, cette and ces at the next real store.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Write ce, cet or cette: ___ robe, ___ homme, ___ pantalon.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Robe is feminine.
2. Homme begins with silent h.
3. Pantalon is masculine.

Answer: cette robe, cet homme, ce pantalon.

Example 2. Translate: a beautiful new coat.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Both are BAGS adjectives and go before.

Answer: un beau nouveau manteau.

Example 3. Translate: How much does this sweater cost? It is too expensive!

▼ **Show solution**

1. Combien coûte + ce pull.
2. Trop cher.

Answer: Combien coûte ce pull? C’est trop cher!

PRACTICE

1. Easy Write ce, cette or ces: ___ chapeau, ___ jupe, ___ gants.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   ce, cette, ces.

2. Easy What does essayer mean in a shop?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   To try on.

3. Easy Translate: a little house.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   une petite maison.

4. Medium Translate: this tree; this friend (m.).

   ▼ **Show answer**

   cet arbre; cet ami.

5. Medium Translate: an old woman; an old man.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   une vieille femme; un vieil homme (un vieux monsieur).

6. Medium Translate: May I try on these shoes?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Je peux essayer ces chaussures?

7. Hard Translate: I am looking for a big black coat, but this coat is too small.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Je cherche un grand manteau noir, mais ce manteau est trop petit.

8. Hard Translate: Strength and honour are her clothing.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Elle est revêtue de force et de gloire.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Writing ce homme. Before a vowel or silent h: cet homme.
- Putting BAGS adjectives after: une maison petite. Say une petite maison.

- Writing un beau ami. Before a vowel: un bel ami.

> **Make it a game · J’aime cette … !.** Look at a catalog or a busy picture together. Take turns pointing at something and saying a full sentence with a demonstrative and an adjective: J’aime cette belle robe bleue! Je n’aime pas ces vieilles chaussures! A mistake passes the turn. Ten correct sentences win.

> **Scripture.** “Strength and honour are her clothing; and she shall rejoice in time to come.” (Proverbs 31:25, KJV)
>
> In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *Elle est revêtue de force et de gloire* The virtuous woman is dressed not only in fine linen but in strength and honour, and faces the future without fear.

UNIT 8

Le Temps et les Saisons: Le Verbe Faire

Lesson 8.1 teaches weather expressions, almost all built with il fait (il fait beau, il fait froid) or with il pleut and il neige, and temperatures in Celsius, with Matthew 5:45 in French. Lesson 8.2 names the seasons, reviews the months and dates, and describes what each season brings, with Monet’s snowy field in Normandy and Genesis 8:22.

Lesson 8.3 conjugates the irregular verb faire and uses it for activities and sports (faire du vélo, faire de la natation, faire les courses), with jouer à for games and jouer de for instruments, and Colossians 3:17. The unit challenge is a weather report delivered on camera, in French.

PREREQUISITES

- Units 1–7.

MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can ask and describe the weather with il fait, il pleut, il neige.
- ☐ I can give the temperature in Celsius.
- ☐ I can name the seasons and what we do in each.
- ☐ I can conjugate faire.
- ☐ I can talk about sports and activities with faire, jouer à and jouer de.

OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **A Louis Segond 1910 Bible (print, or free online)**: Bible Gateway lists it as Louis Segond (LSG). Used all year.
- **Index cards and a box**: For the flashcard deck that grows every lesson.
- **A phone or camera to record**: For the weather report (unit challenge).

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

LESSONS IN THIS UNIT

8.1	**Quel Temps Fait-il? The Weather**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
8.2	**Les Quatre Saisons: Seasons and the Year**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
8.3	**Je Fais du Vélo: Faire, Sports and Activities**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

Unit 8 test

Unit 8 test. Questions 1–2 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written. 50 points.

1. 5 pts

   Oral: Quel temps fait-il aujourd'hui? Answer in three sentences, with the temperature.

2. 5 pts

   Oral: Quelle est ta saison préférée? Pourquoi? Qu'est-ce que tu fais en cette saison?

3. 5 pts

   Translate: It is nice out. It is cold. It is raining. It is snowing. It is windy.

4. 5 pts

   Name the four seasons with in: in spring, in summer, in autumn, in winter.

5. 5 pts

   Conjugate faire in the present tense.

6. 5 pts

   Complete with du, de la, de l': Je fais ___ vélo, ___ natation, ___ ski, ___ équitation, ___ randonnée.

7. 5 pts

   Translate: He plays soccer. She plays the piano. We play chess.

8. 5 pts

   Is 0 °C hot or cold? Is 30 °C hot or cold? What is 20 °C in words?

9. 5 pts

   What do you see in Monet's The Magpie, and where is the bird?

10. 5 pts

    Copy Genesis 8:22 from le froid to l'hiver, and translate.

ANSWER KEY

1. Aujourd'hui, il fait beau et il fait chaud. Il y a du soleil. Il fait vingt-cinq degrés. (or similar)
2. Ma saison préférée est l'hiver parce que j'aime la neige. En hiver, je fais du ski / je joue dans la neige. (or similar)
3. Il fait beau. Il fait froid. Il pleut. Il neige. Il y a du vent (Il fait du vent).
4. au printemps, en été, en automne, en hiver.
5. je fais, tu fais, il/elle/on fait, nous faisons, vous faites, ils/elles font.
6. du, de la, du, de l', de la.
7. Il joue au foot (football). Elle joue du piano. Nous jouons aux échecs.
8. Cold (freezing); hot; vingt degrés (pleasant, about 68 °F).
9. A sunny snowy field with long blue shadows, a fence and a gate, snowy trees and houses; the black and white magpie sits on the gate at the left.
10. le froid et la chaleur, l'été et l'hiver. Cold and heat, and summer and winter.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

UNIT CHALLENGE: LA MÉTÉO (THE WEATHER REPORT)

Record a two-minute weather report in French, like a television forecaster: today's weather in your town with the temperature, the forecast for tomorrow in the near future (Demain, il va pleuvoir), the weather in three French-speaking cities (Paris, Montréal, Dakar), and advice on what to wear and what to do (Portez un manteau! C'est un bon jour pour faire du vélo). Use a map or drawn symbols.

LOOK FOR	WHAT IT MEANS
Weather expressions	Uses at least eight weather expressions correctly.
Temperature and forecast	Gives temperatures in Celsius and the near future correctly.
Faire and activities	Uses faire and two activities correctly.
Presentation	Speaks clearly, like a real forecaster.

8.1 Quel Temps Fait-il? The Weather

OBJECTIVES

- Ask and describe the weather with il fait, il pleut, il neige and il y a.
- Give the temperature in degrees Celsius.
- Say what the weather is going to be with the near future.
- Read Matthew 5:45 in French.

> **Warm-up.** Look out the window. In English, you would say it is sunny, or cloudy, or raining. In French, the weather is almost always something that it makes: il fait beau, it makes beautiful. Let's find out what it is making today.

WATCH

The French Weather & Seasons (French Essentials Lesson 6)

Learn French With Alexa · 11:54

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Kq4Luegns8c

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the chart. Draw a weather symbol for each expression as Alexa says it.

Note: Learn French With Alexa: the French weather and seasons, French Essentials lesson 6, about twelve minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Learn French - French Weather Vocabulary

Learn French with FrenchPod101.com · 2:40

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Rs75GlQBdU0

Session 2 or 3: a short review of weather words.

KEY TERMS

le temps

The weather (also time).

la météo

The weather forecast.

le degré

Degree: France uses Celsius.

pleuvoir / neiger

To rain / to snow: only used with il.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

le temps
luh TAHN

le · weather

weather

il fait beau
eel feh BOH

phrase

it is nice out

il fait chaud
eel feh SHOH

phrase

it is hot

il fait froid
eel feh FRWAH

phrase

it is cold

il pleut
eel PLUH

phrase

it is raining

il neige
eel NEHZH

phrase

it is snowing

le soleil
luh soh-LEY

le · weather

sun

le vent
luh VAHN

le · weather

wind

le nuage
luh new-AHZH

le · weather

cloud

la pluie
lah PLWEE

la · weather

rain

l’orage
loh-RAHZH
le · weather
storm

le degré
luh duh-GRAY
le · weather
degree

CORE IDEAS

The story. In the Sermon on the Mount, Jesus taught something hard: love your enemies, and pray for those who persecute you. Why? Because that is what your Father does: **car il fait lever son soleil sur les méchants et sur les bons, et il fait pleuvoir sur les justes et sur les injustes.** Every sunny morning and every gentle rain is a gift from God given even to those who do not thank him. The French verse uses the weather verb itself: il fait pleuvoir, he makes it rain.

How French works: il fait. Quel temps fait-il? What is the weather like? **Il fait beau** (it is nice), **Il fait mauvais** (it is bad), **Il fait chaud** (hot), **Il fait froid** (cold), **Il fait frais** (cool), **Il fait doux** (mild), **Il fait gris** (gray, overcast), **Il fait du soleil / Il y a du soleil** (sunny), **Il y a du vent** (windy), **Il y a des nuages** (cloudy), **Il y a du brouillard** (foggy), **Il y a de l’orage** (stormy).

How French works: rain and snow. Two weather verbs stand alone, always with il: **Il pleut** (it is raining, from pleuvoir) and **Il neige** (it is snowing, from neiger). In the near future: **Il va pleuvoir. Il va neiger. Il va faire beau demain.** Nouns: **la pluie** (rain), **la neige** (snow), **le soleil** (sun), **le vent** (wind), **le nuage** (cloud), **l’orage** (m., storm), **l’arc-en-ciel** (m., rainbow).

How French works: temperatures. France and every French-speaking country use Celsius: **Il fait vingt degrés** (20 °C, about 68 °F, pleasant). **Il fait zéro degré**: water freezes. **Il fait moins cinq** (−5 °C, about 23 °F). **Il fait trente-cinq degrés**: a heat wave, **la canicule**. A quick rule: double the Celsius and add 30 for a rough Fahrenheit.

ACTIVITY

Le journal météo (the weather diary)

Keep a weather diary in French for a week.

You will need

- Your French notebook
- A thermometer, or a weather app set to Celsius

Steps

1. Every day this week, at the same hour, look outside and read the temperature in Celsius.
2. Write the date and three sentences: Lundi, le 3 février. Il fait froid. Il neige. Il fait moins deux degrés.
3. Draw a weather symbol for each day.
4. At the end of the week, look up the weather in Paris, Montréal and Dakar and compare: À Dakar, il fait chaud!

Tips

- Add the forecast for tomorrow each day in the near future: Demain, il va pleuvoir.
- Make a graph of the week's temperatures with French labels.

Check your work

☐ I wrote the weather for seven days.

☐ I used eight different weather expressions.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the weather expressions with a symbol for each.
2. Copy the weather nouns.
3. Copy the temperature rule with three examples.
4. Copy Matthew 5:45 in French and English.

> **From history.** The modern weather forecast began in France: after a storm sank French warships in the Black Sea in 1854, the astronomer Urbain Le Verrier showed that the storm could have been tracked across Europe by telegraph, and France began collecting daily weather reports.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can ask Quel temps fait-il? every morning this week and answer in Celsius.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Translate: It is cold and it is snowing.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Il fait froid.
2. Il neige.

Answer: Il fait froid et il neige.

Example 2. Translate: Tomorrow it is going to be nice.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Near future of il fait beau: il va faire beau.

Answer: Demain, il va faire beau.

Example 3. Say −10 °C in French, and is it warm?

▼ **Show solution**

1. Moins dix degrés.

Answer: Il fait moins dix degrés. No, it is very cold.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Translate: It is hot.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Il fait chaud.

2. Easy Translate: It is raining.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Il pleut.

3. Easy What does il y a du vent mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   It is windy.

4. Medium Translate: It is cloudy and cool.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Il y a des nuages et il fait frais.

5. Medium Translate: It is going to snow tonight.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Il va neiger ce soir.

6. Medium Is 25 °C hot, cool or cold? About how much in Fahrenheit?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Warm or hot: about 77–80 °F.

7. Hard Translate: What is the weather like in Montreal? It is very cold: it is minus fifteen degrees.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Quel temps fait-il à Montréal? Il fait très froid: il fait moins quinze degrés.

8. Hard Translate: He maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good, and sendeth rain on the just and on the unjust.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Il fait lever son soleil sur les méchants et sur les bons, et il fait pleuvoir sur les justes et sur les injustes.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying c’est froid for the weather. Use il fait froid (c’est froid is for a thing: the soup is cold).
- Saying il est pleuvant. Just il pleut.

- Saying il est chaud for the weather. Est chaud describes a thing (le café est chaud: the coffee is hot); for the weather say il fait chaud, and for how you feel, j'ai chaud.

> **Make it a game · Le présentateur (the forecaster).** One player is the forecaster and stands before a map. The others call out a city and the forecaster must invent its weather in three sentences: À Paris, il pleut. Il fait douze degrés. Demain, il va faire beau. Switch forecasters after five cities.

> **Scripture.** "That ye may be the children of your Father which is in heaven: for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good, and sendeth rain on the just and on the unjust." (Matthew 5:45, KJV)
>
> In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *il fait lever son soleil sur les méchants et sur les bons* Jesus teaches love of enemies, because the Father gives sun and rain to the evil and the good alike.

UNIT 8 · LE TEMPS ET LES SAISONS: LE VERBE FAIRE · LESSON 8.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

8.2 Les Quatre Saisons: Seasons and the Year

OBJECTIVES

- Name the seasons with au printemps, en été, en automne, en hiver.
- Review the months and give dates and birthdays.
- Describe what each season brings and what we do in it.
- Read Genesis 8:22 in French.

> **Warm-up.** What season is it now where you live? In some French-speaking lands, like Quebec, winter brings two meters of snow; in others, like Senegal, there are only a dry season and a rainy one. Today you learn to speak of the turning year.

WATCH

The French Months of the Year (French Essentials Lesson 5)

Learn French With Alexa · 9:10

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=JyROOY4RPJg

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the seasons chart. Say each month with Alexa and name its season.

Note: Learn French With Alexa: the French months of the year, French Essentials lesson 5, about nine minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Weekly French Words with Lya - Weather

Learn French with FrenchPod101.com · 1:48

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=zHQBRdmuBro

Session 2 or 3: a quick review of weather words for each season.

KEY TERMS

la saison
The season.

les semailles
Sowing, seedtime.

la moisson
The harvest.

l'anniversaire
Birthday (m.); also anniversary.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

le printemps
luh pran-TAHN
le · season
spring

l'été
lay-TAY
le · season
summer

l’automne
loh-TUN
le · season
autumn

l’hiver
lee-VEHR
le · season
winter

la saison
lah seh-ZOHN
la · season
season

la fleur
lah FLUHR
la · nature
flower

la feuille
lah FUHY
la · nature
leaf

l’arbre
LAHRBR
le · nature
tree

la neige
lah NEHZH
la · weather
snow

les vacances
lay vah-KAHNS
les · season
holidays, vacation

l’anniversaire
lah-nee-vehr-SEHR
le · season
birthday

la moisson
lah mwah-SOHN
la · faith
harvest

CORE IDEAS

The story. When the waters of the flood went down, Noah came out of the ark and built an altar to the LORD. And God promised never again to curse the ground: **Tant que la terre subsistera, les semailles et la moisson, le froid et la chaleur, l’été et l’hiver, le jour et la nuit ne cesseront point.** Every spring planting and every autumn harvest since is the keeping of that promise.

How French works: the seasons. le printemps (spring), **l’été** (m., summer), **l’automne** (m., autumn), **l’hiver** (m., winter): all masculine. In a season: **au printemps**, but **en été, en automne, en hiver** (en before a vowel sound). **Au**

printemps, il pleut et les fleurs poussent. En été, il fait chaud. En automne, les feuilles tombent. En hiver, il neige.

How French works: months and dates review. janvier, février, mars, avril, mai, juin, juillet, août, septembre, octobre, novembre, décembre, all masculine and without capitals. In a month: **en mai** or **au mois de mai. Quelle est la date de ton anniversaire? C'est le douze mars.** Years: **en deux mille vingt-six** (in 2026); **en mille huit cent soixante-huit** (in 1868).

How French works: seasonal words. la fleur (flower), **la feuille** (leaf), **l'arbre** (m., tree), **la neige**, **la plage** (beach), **les vacances** (f., holidays), **la rentrée** (the return to school in September, a great event in France), **la récolte** (crop), **les vendanges** (f., the grape harvest). Verbs: **fleurir** (to bloom), **tomber** (to fall), **planter**, **récolter** (to harvest).

PICTURE STUDY



The Magpie (La Pie), Claude Monet, 1868–1869 · Oil on canvas · Musée d'Orsay, Paris

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Monet painted this in the winter of 1868 to 1869 near Étretat on the coast of Normandy, outdoors in the cold. Snow had always been painted white and gray, but Monet looked closely and painted the shadows on the snow blue, lilac and violet, and the sunlit snow cream and gold. The jury of the Paris Salon rejected it in 1869; today it is one of the most loved paintings in the Musée d'Orsay.

Look closely

- Find the magpie. Why might Monet put one small dark bird in so much white?
- What colors are the shadows? Are they gray?
- Where is the sun? How can you tell from the shadows?
- Describe the scene in French: C'est l'hiver. Il neige? Non, il fait beau, mais il fait froid …

Talk about it

1. What do you notice about snow that you never noticed before?
2. Why did Monet go outside in winter to paint, instead of painting from memory?

ACTIVITY

La roue des saisons (the wheel of the seasons)

Make a seasons wheel and describe the year.

You will need

- A paper plate or circle of card, divided into four
- Colored pencils

Steps

1. Divide a circle into four seasons; write the name of each and its three months around the edge.
2. In each quarter, draw the weather and one activity, and write two sentences: En hiver, il neige. Je fais un bonhomme de neige.
3. Mark the birthdays of your family on the wheel with dates in French.
4. Mark the feasts of the church year on the wheel: Noël, Pâques, la Pentecôte, la Toussaint.

Tips

- Compare the seasons in Quebec, France and Senegal.
- Paint a snow scene with colored shadows, like Monet.

Check your work

☐ I named the seasons with au and en correctly.

☐ I wrote five birthdays as French dates.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the seasons with au printemps, en été, en automne, en hiver.
2. Copy the months and three dates.
3. Copy the seasonal words.
4. Copy Genesis 8:22 in French and English.

> **From history.** In 1793 the French Revolution abolished the Christian calendar, with its Sundays and saints' days, and made new ten-day weeks and months named after the weather: Brumaire (fog), Nivôse (snow), Pluviôse (rain), Ventôse (wind). It was so unpopular that Napoleon abolished it in 1806.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can mark birthdays and feasts on a French calendar on the kitchen wall.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Translate: In spring, it rains and the flowers bloom.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Au printemps.
2. Les fleurs fleurissent.

Answer: Au printemps, il pleut et les fleurs fleurissent.

Example 2. Translate: My birthday is August 3.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Mon anniversaire, c'est le trois août.

Answer: Mon anniversaire est le trois août.

Example 3. Translate: In autumn the leaves fall.

▼ **Show solution**

1. En automne.
2. Tomber: les feuilles tombent.

Answer: En automne, les feuilles tombent.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Name the four seasons with their articles.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   le printemps, l’été, l’automne, l’hiver.

2. Easy Translate: in summer; in spring.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   en été; au printemps.

3. Easy Which months are in winter (in France)?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   décembre, janvier, février (and part of mars).

4. Medium Translate: In winter it is cold and it snows.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   En hiver, il fait froid et il neige.

5. Medium Write the year 1868 in French.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   mille huit cent soixante-huit.

6. Medium What is la rentrée?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The return to school (and work) in early September.

7. Hard Translate: When is your birthday? It is in July, on the fourteenth.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Quand est ton anniversaire? C’est en juillet, le quatorze.

8. Hard Translate: seedtime and harvest, and cold and heat, and summer and winter.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   les semailles et la moisson, le froid et la chaleur, l’été et l’hiver.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying en printemps. It is au printemps (but en été, en automne, en hiver).

- Capitalizing months and seasons: Juillet, Hiver. In French: juillet, hiver.
- Saying le printemps for in spring. Add au: au printemps.

> **Make it a game · Devine la saison (guess the season).** One player describes a season in three French sentences without naming it: Il fait chaud. Je vais à la plage. Il y a des vacances. The others guess: C'est l'été! A correct guess on the first sentence wins two points.

> **Scripture.** "While the earth remaineth, seedtime and harvest, and cold and heat, and summer and winter, and day and night shall not cease." (Genesis 8:22, KJV)
>
> In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *les semailles et la moisson, le froid et la chaleur, l'été et l'hiver* After the flood, God promises Noah that the seasons will never cease while the earth remains.

UNIT 8 · LE TEMPS ET LES SAISONS: LE VERBE FAIRE · LESSON 8.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

8.3 Je Fais du Vélo: Faire, Sports and Activities

OBJECTIVES

- Conjugate the irregular verb faire.
- Talk about activities with faire du, de la, de l' (faire du vélo, faire de la natation).
- Use jouer à for sports and games and jouer de for instruments.
- Read Colossians 3:17 in French.

> **Warm-up.** What do you do on a free afternoon? Ride a bike, swim, play soccer, play the piano? In French, almost all of it is done with one verb, faire, to do or to make.

WATCH

FAIRE in the Present Tense - Mastering French Verbs

Learn French with FrenchPod101.com · 2:34

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=GbFCYhx8b7I

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the chart. Conjugate faire aloud until you can say it without looking.

Note: FrenchPod101: faire in the present tense, about two and a half minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

French Speaking Practice: Giving an Opinion About the Weather

Learn French with FrenchPod101.com · 2:24

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=jMH2OdDbu5A

Session 2 or 3: speaking practice, giving an opinion about the weather, which uses faire.

KEY TERMS

faire
To do, to make (irregular).

jouer à
To play a sport or game: jouer au foot.

jouer de
To play an instrument: jouer du piano.

les actions de grâces
Thanksgiving.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

faire
FEHR
verb
to do, to make

faire du vélo
fehr dew vay-LOH
phrase
to go cycling

faire de la natation
fehr duh lah nah-tah-SYOHN
phrase
to swim (as a sport)

faire de la randonnée
fehr duh lah rahn-doh-NAY
phrase
to go hiking

faire la cuisine
fehr lah kwee-ZEEN
phrase
to cook

faire les courses
fehr lay KOORS
phrase
to do the shopping

les devoirs
lay duh-VWAHR
les · school
homework

jouer au foot
zhoo-ay oh FOOT
phrase
to play soccer

jouer du piano
zhoo-ay dew pyah-NOH
phrase
to play the piano

les échecs
lay-zay-SHEK
les · games
chess

l'œuvre
LUHVR
la · faith
work, deed

le nom
luh NOHN
le · faith
name

CORE IDEAS

The story. Paul told the Colossians that the whole of life belongs to Christ, not only the hours of prayer: **Et quoi que vous fassiez, en parole ou en œuvre, faites tout au nom du Seigneur Jésus, en rendant par lui des actions de grâces à Dieu le Père.** And whatsoever ye do in word or deed, do all in the name of the Lord Jesus. Study, work, sport and play can all be done to the glory of God. Fassiez and faites are both forms of faire.

How French works: faire. je fais, tu fais, il/elle/on fait, nous faisons (said fuh-ZOHN), **vous faites, ils/elles font.** Only three common French verbs have a vous form

not ending in -ez: **vous êtes, vous faites, vous dites. Qu'est-ce que tu fais?** What are you doing? **Je fais mes devoirs** (my homework). **Je fais la cuisine** (I cook). **Nous faisons les courses** (we do the shopping). **Il fait beau** is faire too.

How French works: faire + activities. For many sports and activities, use faire + du, de la, de l': **faire du vélo** (cycling), **faire du ski**, **faire du sport**, **faire de la natation** (swimming), **faire de la randonnée** (hiking), **faire de la musique**, **faire de l'équitation** (riding). In the negative: **Je ne fais pas de ski.**

How French works: jouer à and jouer de. Games and team sports take **jouer à** (au, à la, aux): **jouer au foot** (soccer), **jouer au basket, jouer au tennis, jouer aux cartes, jouer aux échecs** (chess). Instruments take **jouer de** (du, de la, de l'): **jouer du piano, jouer du violon, jouer de la guitare, jouer de l'orgue** (organ). Ask: **Tu fais du sport? Tu joues d'un instrument?**

ACTIVITY

Mon agenda (my weekly planner)

Plan a week of activities and interview your family.

You will need

- Your French notebook
- A pencil

Steps

1. Make a planner for the week with the days and your activities: Lundi: je fais du vélo. Mardi: je joue du piano …
2. Interview three family members: Qu’est-ce que tu fais le samedi? Tu joues d’un instrument? Tu fais du sport?
3. Write their answers in the third person: Mon frère joue au foot. Ma mère fait de la randonnée.
4. Add the weather: S’il fait beau, nous faisons une randonnée. S’il pleut, nous jouons aux cartes.

Tips

- Make a chart of the family’s sports and instruments.
- Find the French names for the sport you love most.

Check your work

☐ I conjugated faire in all six forms.

☐ I used faire du, jouer à and jouer de correctly.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the chart of faire, with the three vous forms that end in -tes.
2. Copy the activities with faire du / de la / de l’.
3. Copy the games and instruments with jouer à and jouer de.
4. Copy Colossians 3:17 in French and English.

> **From history.** The Tour de France, the most famous bicycle race in the world, was first run in 1903 and still crosses France every July over three weeks, climbing the Alps and the Pyrenees and ending in Paris on the Champs-Élysées.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can ask Qu'est-ce que tu fais? whenever someone is busy this week, and answer in French.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Translate: We are doing our homework.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Nous faisons.
2. Nos devoirs.

Answer: Nous faisons nos devoirs.

Example 2. Translate: She swims and plays the violin.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Faire de la natation.
2. Jouer du violon.

Answer: Elle fait de la natation et elle joue du violon.

Example 3. Translate: They play chess on Sundays.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Jouer aux échecs.
2. Le dimanche.

Answer: Ils jouent aux échecs le dimanche.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Conjugate faire for je, tu and il.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   je fais, tu fais, il fait.

2. Easy What does faire la cuisine mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   To cook.

3. Easy Translate: I play soccer.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Je joue au foot.

4. Medium Conjugate faire for nous, vous and ils.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   nous faisons, vous faites, ils font.

5. Medium Translate: He goes cycling; we go hiking.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Il fait du vélo; nous faisons de la randonnée.

6. Medium Translate: My sister plays the guitar.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ma sœur joue de la guitare.

7. Hard Translate: If it is nice, we are going to go skiing; if it rains, we are going to play cards.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   S'il fait beau, nous allons faire du ski; s'il pleut, nous allons jouer aux cartes.

8. Hard Translate: And whatsoever ye do in word or deed, do all in the name of the Lord Jesus.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Et quoi que vous fassiez, en parole ou en œuvre, faites tout au nom du Seigneur Jésus.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Writing vous faisez. The form is vous faites.
- Confusing jouer à and jouer de: je joue au piano. Instruments take de: je joue du piano.
- Saying je fais vélo. Keep the article: je fais du vélo.

> **Make it a game · Mime-moi!.** One player mimes an activity (swimming, playing the violin, cooking, playing chess). The others guess in a full sentence with faire or jouer: Tu fais de la natation! Tu joues du violon! Correct sentence with the right preposition wins a point.

> **Scripture.** "And whatsoever ye do in word or deed, do all in the name of the Lord Jesus, giving thanks to God and the Father by him." (Colossians 3:17, KJV)
>
> In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *faites tout au nom du Seigneur Jésus* Paul teaches that every word and deed, not only worship, is to be done in the name of the Lord Jesus with thanksgiving.

UNIT 9

La Vie Quotidienne: Verbes Pronominaux et Modaux

Lesson 9.1 teaches reflexive verbs with their pronouns (me, te, se, nous, vous, se) and the daily routine from waking to bedtime, with times, and Mark 1:35 in French. Lesson 9.2 names the rooms and furniture of the house and the household chores, studies Chardin's quiet kitchen scene, and reads Proverbs 24:3.

Lesson 9.3 conjugates the three modal verbs vouloir (to want), pouvoir (to be able) and devoir (to have to), each followed by an infinitive, with Christ's prayer in Gethsemane, Matthew 26:39. The unit challenge is a video tour of a day in your life, in French.

PREREQUISITES

- Units 1–8.

MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can conjugate reflexive verbs in the present tense.
- ☐ I can describe my daily routine with times.
- ☐ I can name the rooms and furniture of a house and the chores.
- ☐ I can conjugate vouloir, pouvoir and devoir and use them with an infinitive.
- ☐ I can make reflexive and modal verbs negative.

OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **A Louis Segond 1910 Bible (print, or free online)**: Bible Gateway lists it as Louis Segond (LSG). Used all year.
- **Index cards and a box**: For the flashcard deck that grows every lesson.
- **A phone or camera to record**: For the day-in-my-life video (unit challenge).

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

LESSONS IN THIS UNIT

9.1	**Je Me Lève: Reflexive Verbs and the Daily Routine**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
9.2	**La Maison: Rooms, Furniture and Chores**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
9.3	**Je Veux, Je Peux, Je Dois: Modal Verbs**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

Unit 9 test

Unit 9 test. Questions 1–2 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written. 50 points.

1. 5 pts

   Oral: Describe your morning routine in five sentences with times.

2. 5 pts

   Oral: Answer: Qu’est-ce que tu dois faire à la maison? Qu’est-ce que tu veux faire ce week-end?

3. 5 pts

   Conjugate se lever in the present tense.

4. 5 pts

   Translate: I wake up at six. She gets dressed. We go to bed at ten.

5. 5 pts

   Make negative: Je me lève tôt. Ils se couchent tard.

6. 5 pts

   Give the French: the kitchen, the bedroom, the bathroom, the living room, the garden.

7. 5 pts

   Translate: I do the dishes and my brother makes his bed.

8. 5 pts

   Conjugate vouloir in the present tense.

9. 5 pts

   Translate: Can you help me? We must work. They want to sing.

10. 5 pts

    Copy Matthew 26:39 from non pas to tu veux, and translate.

ANSWER KEY

1. Je me réveille à sept heures. Je me lève. Je me lave et je m'habille. Je prends le petit-déjeuner à sept heures et demie. Je me brosse les dents. (or similar)
2. Je dois faire mon lit et mettre la table. Ce week-end, je veux jouer au foot. (or similar)
3. je me lève, tu te lèves, il/elle/on se lève, nous nous levons, vous vous levez, ils/elles se lèvent.
4. Je me réveille à six heures. Elle s'habille. Nous nous couchons à dix heures.
5. Je ne me lève pas tôt. Ils ne se couchent pas tard.
6. la cuisine, la chambre, la salle de bains, le salon, le jardin.
7. Je fais la vaisselle et mon frère fait son lit.
8. je veux, tu veux, il/elle/on veut, nous voulons, vous voulez, ils/elles veulent.
9. Peux-tu m'aider? (Tu peux m'aider?) Nous devons travailler. Ils veulent chanter.
10. non pas ce que je veux, mais ce que tu veux. Not as I will, but as thou wilt.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

UNIT CHALLENGE: UNE JOURNÉE DANS MA VIE (A DAY IN MY LIFE)

Record a three-minute video tour of a day in your life, in French: wake up (Je me réveille à ...), show the rooms of the house as you move through them (Voici la cuisine. Ici, je prends le petit-déjeuner), name your chores (Je dois faire mon lit), your studies and activities, and end with your evening prayer and bedtime (Je me couche à ...). Use at least six reflexive verbs and the three modal verbs.

LOOK FOR	WHAT IT MEANS
Reflexive verbs	Uses six reflexive verbs correctly with times.
House and chores	Names six rooms and three chores.
Modal verbs	Uses vouloir, pouvoir and devoir with an infinitive.
Presentation	Speaks clearly in a well-organized tour.

9.1 Je Me Lève: Reflexive Verbs and the Daily Routine

OBJECTIVES

- Conjugate reflexive verbs with me, te, se, nous, vous, se.
- Describe the daily routine from waking to bedtime, with times.
- Make reflexive verbs negative and use them in the near future.
- Read Mark 1:35 in French.

> **Warm-up.** In French you do not just wake up: you wake yourself up. You do not just get dressed: you dress yourself. Today you meet the verbs that turn back on the person doing them.

WATCH

Learn French with Video - Talking About Your Daily Routine

Learn French with FrenchPod101.com · 3:20

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=WuT7lHhC-nw

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the routine list. Act out each step of the day as you hear it.

Note: FrenchPod101: talking about your daily routine, about three minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

French Made Easy: Reflexive Verbs

Learn French With Alexa · 5:48

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=DybxlyAQrxo

Session 2 or 3: a clear explanation of reflexive verbs.

KEY TERMS

le verbe pronominal

A reflexive verb: its infinitive has se (se lever, s'habiller).

le pronom réfléchi

The reflexive pronoun: me, te, se, nous, vous, se.

la routine

The daily routine.

un lieu désert

A solitary place, a quiet place apart.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

se réveiller
suh ray-veh-YAY

verb

to wake up

se lever
suh luh-VAY

verb

to get up

se laver
suh lah-VAY

verb

to wash (oneself)

se doucher
suh doo-SHAY

verb

to shower

s'habiller
sah-bee-YAY

verb

to get dressed

se brosser les dents
suh broh-say lay DAHN

verb

to brush one's teeth

se dépêcher
suh day-peh-SHAY

verb

to hurry

se reposer
suh ruh-poh-ZAY

verb

to rest

se coucher
suh koo-SHAY
verb
to go to bed

tôt / tard
TOH / TAHR
adverb
early / late

sombre
SOHMBR
adjective
dark

le lieu
luh LYUH
le · place
place

CORE IDEAS

The story. Mark tells of a long day in Capernaum: Jesus taught in the synagogue, cast out an unclean spirit, healed Peter's mother-in-law, and at sunset the whole city crowded at the door with the sick. The next morning: **Vers le matin, pendant qu'il faisait encore très sombre, il se leva, et sortit pour aller dans un lieu désert, où il pria.** Before the crowds, before the work, he rose and prayed. **Il se leva**: he got up, from the reflexive verb se lever.

How French works: reflexive verbs. The pronoun matches the subject: **se laver** (to wash oneself): **je me lave, tu te laves, il/elle/on se lave, nous nous lavons, vous vous lavez, ils/elles se lavent.** Before a vowel: **m', t', s'**: **je m'habille** (I get dressed), **il s'appelle** (he is called, literally he calls himself: you have known a reflexive verb since Unit 1!).

How French works: the routine. se réveiller (to wake up), **se lever** (to get up: je me lève, nous nous levons), **se laver** (to wash), **se doucher** (to shower), **se brosser les dents / les cheveux** (to brush one's teeth / hair), **s'habiller** (to get dressed), **se dépêcher** (to hurry), **se reposer** (to rest), **se coucher** (to go to bed), **s'endormir** (to fall asleep). **Je me réveille à six heures et demie, je me lève, je me lave ...**

How French works: negatives and the near future. Ne goes before the pronoun and pas after the verb: **Je ne me lève pas tôt. Il ne se dépêche pas.** In the near future, the pronoun stays with the infinitive and matches the subject: **Je vais me coucher. Nous allons nous lever à six heures.** Commands: **Lève-toi! Dépêchez-vous! Levons-nous!**

ACTIVITY

Ma routine en images (my routine in pictures)

Make a picture strip of your day and narrate it.

You will need

- Paper and colored pencils, or photos
- A clock (your paper clock from Unit 4)

Steps

1. Draw (or photograph) ten steps of your day from waking to sleeping, with a clock in each picture.
2. Write a caption for each with a reflexive verb and the time: Je me réveille à six heures et demie.
3. Narrate the strip aloud to your family.
4. Then narrate a family member's day in the third person: Papa se lève à cinq heures. Il se douche …

Tips

- Narrate the ideal Saturday in the near future: Samedi, je vais me lever à neuf heures!
- Add the family's morning prayer to the strip.

Check your work

☐ I used eight reflexive verbs correctly.

☐ I gave times for each step.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the chart of se laver and se lever.
2. Copy the ten routine verbs.
3. Write your routine in ten sentences with times.
4. Copy Mark 1:35 in French and English.

From history. The monks of the great French abbeys, Cluny, Cîteaux and Clairvaux, rose in the middle of the night for the office of Vigils, and still do: the Trappist monks of the order founded at La Trappe in Normandy rise before four in the morning to pray.

At home in French. French-speaking families can wake the household with Lève-toi! and Dépêche-toi! all week.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Conjugate s’habiller for je and nous.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Je m’ before a vowel.
2. Nous nous.

Answer: je m’habille, nous nous habillons.

Example 2. Make negative: Tu te couches tard.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Ne before te, pas after the verb.

Answer: Tu ne te couches pas tard.

Example 3. Translate: I am going to go to bed.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Je vais + me coucher.

Answer: Je vais me coucher.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Give the reflexive pronouns for je, tu, il.

▼ **Show answer**

me, te, se.

2. Easy Translate: I get up.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Je me lève.

3. Easy What does se brosser les dents mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   To brush one’s teeth.

4. Medium Complete: Nous ___ réveillons. Vous ___ habillez. Elles ___ couchent.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   nous; vous; se.

5. Medium Translate: He showers and gets dressed.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Il se douche et il s’habille.

6. Medium Make negative: Je me dépêche.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Je ne me dépêche pas.

7. Hard Translate: On Saturdays, we do not get up early; we are going to rest.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Le samedi, nous ne nous levons pas tôt; nous allons nous reposer.

8. Hard Translate Mark 1:35: Il se leva, et sortit pour aller dans un lieu désert, où il pria.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   He rose (got up) and went out to go to a solitary place, where he prayed.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Forgetting the pronoun: je lève à sept heures. Say je me lève.
- Using the wrong pronoun in the near future: je vais se lever. Match the subject: je vais me lever.
- Putting pas before the pronoun: je me pas lève. Say je ne me lève pas.

Make it a game · Le réveil (the alarm clock). The parent calls out a time (Six heures et demie!). The student must say what he or she does at that time with a reflexive verb and act it out: Je me réveille! Get the routine in order from morning to night without a mistake to win.

Scripture. “And in the morning, rising up a great while before day, he went out, and departed into a solitary place, and there prayed.” (Mark 1:35, KJV)

In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *il se leva, et sortit pour aller dans un lieu désert, où il pria* After a long day of healing, Jesus rises before dawn to pray alone. Il se leva is the reflexive verb se lever.

UNIT 9 · LA VIE QUOTIDIENNE: VERBES PRONOMINAUX ET MODAUX · LESSON 9.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

9.2 La Maison: Rooms, Furniture and Chores

OBJECTIVES

- Name the rooms of the house and twenty pieces of furniture.
- Say where things are with the prepositions of place.
- Name the household chores with faire and other verbs.
- Read Proverbs 24:3 in French.

Warm-up. Draw the outline of your home in one minute: where is the kitchen, where do you sleep, where does the family gather? Today every room gets its French name, and so does the work that keeps it.

WATCH

Weekly French Words with Lya - Rooms in your House

Learn French with FrenchPod101.com · 1:33

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=n7lYXZr8LcA

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the word list. Walk through your house naming each room.

Note: FrenchPod101: weekly French words with Lya, rooms in your house, about a minute and a half.

BACKUP VIDEO

Weekly French Words with Lya - Housework

Learn French with FrenchPod101.com · 2:18

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=XB146bjMkWM

Session 2 or 3: housework words.

KEY TERMS

la pièce
A room (of a house).

le meuble
A piece of furniture; les meubles, furniture.

les tâches ménagères
Household chores.

la sagesse
Wisdom.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

la cuisine
lah kwee-ZEEN
la · house
kitchen

la chambre
lah SHAHMBR
la · house
bedroom

la salle de bains

lah sahl duh BAN

la · house

bathroom

le salon

luh sah-LOHN

le · house

living room

le jardin

luh zhar-DAN

le · house

garden, yard

le lit

luh LEE

le · house

bed

le canapé

luh kah-nah-PAY

le · house

sofa

la fenêtre

lah fuh-NETR

la · house

window

faire la vaisselle

fehr lah veh-SEL

phrase

to do the dishes

mettre la table

metr lah TAHBL

phrase

to set the table

ranger

rahn-ZHAY

verb

to tidy

la sagesse

lah sah-ZHES

la · faith

wisdom

CORE IDEAS

The story. The proverbs of Solomon teach that a household is built by more than bricks: **C'est par la sagesse qu'une maison s'élève, Et par l'intelligence qu'elle s'affermit.** Through wisdom is an house builded; and by understanding it is established. A home is made by faithful daily work, kindness and the fear of God, the unseen walls that hold a family together.

How French works: rooms. la maison (house), **l'appartement** (m., apartment), **la cuisine** (kitchen), **la salle à manger** (dining room), **le salon** (living room), **la chambre** (bedroom), **la salle de bains** (bathroom), **les toilettes** (f., toilet, a separate room in

French homes), **l'escalier** (m., stairs), **le grenier** (attic), **la cave** (cellar), **le garage**, **le jardin** (garden, yard). Floors: **le rez-de-chaussée** (ground floor), **le premier étage** (the floor above it, the American second floor).

How French works: furniture. le lit (bed), **la table**, **la chaise**, **le fauteuil** (armchair), **le canapé** (sofa), **l'armoire** (f., wardrobe), **l'étagère** (f., shelf), **la lampe**, **le tapis** (rug), **le frigo** (fridge), **le four** (oven), **l'évier** (m., sink), **la fenêtre** (window), **la porte** (door), **le mur** (wall). With prepositions: **La lampe est sur la table. Le chat est sous le lit. L'armoire est à côté de la fenêtre.**

How French works: chores. faire la vaisselle (do the dishes), **faire le ménage** (do the housework), **faire son lit** (make one's bed), **faire la lessive** (do the laundry), **mettre la table** (set the table), **débarrasser la table** (clear the table), **passer l'aspirateur** (vacuum), **ranger sa chambre** (tidy one's room), **sortir la poubelle** (take out the trash), **tondre la pelouse** (mow the lawn). **Je fais la vaisselle et ma sœur met la table.**

PICTURE STUDY



The Return from Market (La Pourvoyeuse), Jean-Siméon Chardin, 1738 · Oil on canvas · National Gallery of Canada, Ottawa

Image: Wikimedia Commons, photograph by Maltaper, CC BY-SA 4.0; the painting itself is public domain

Chardin painted the quiet work of the household, servants and mothers, kitchens and pantries, with the same seriousness that other painters gave to kings. The woman pauses for a moment, tired, and looks toward something we cannot see. Chardin painted this scene three times; this version is signed and dated 1738 on the doorframe, and the others are in the Louvre in Paris and in Berlin.

Look closely

- Name in French what she has brought home: le pain, la viande …
- Find the water cistern, the bucket and the second maid through the door.
- Find Chardin's signature and date on the doorframe.
- How does the woman feel? How can you tell?

Talk about it

1. Why might a great painter choose to paint a servant?
2. Who does the quiet work in your home? How can you thank them?

ACTIVITY

Le plan de la maison (the floor plan)

Draw a floor plan of your home and make a chore chart.

You will need

- Large paper, a ruler and colored pencils

Steps

1. Draw a floor plan of your home, labeling every room in French.
2. Draw and label at least fifteen pieces of furniture in their places.
3. Give a tour with prepositions: Dans le salon, il y a un canapé. La lampe est à côté du canapé.
4. Make a family chore chart in French for the week: Lundi: Marie fait la vaisselle. Paul sort la poubelle.

Tips

- Describe your dream house in French with ten sentences.
- Do every chore on the chart this week, saying its name as you do it.

Check your work

☐ I labeled every room and fifteen pieces of furniture.

☐ I named six chores correctly.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the rooms with their articles.
2. Copy twenty pieces of furniture.
3. Copy ten chores.
4. Copy Proverbs 24:3 in French and English.

> **From history.** The French armoire, a tall wardrobe of carved wood, was for centuries the most precious piece of furniture in a country house; in Normandy a bride's family often gave her one at her wedding, filled with linens.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can post the chore chart in French on the refrigerator for the rest of the year.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Translate: The bed is next to the window.

▼ **Show solution**

1. À côté de la fenêtre.

Answer: Le lit est à côté de la fenêtre.

Example 2. Translate: I do the dishes and he takes out the trash.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Faire la vaisselle.
2. Sortir la poubelle: il sort.

Answer: Je fais la vaisselle et il sort la poubelle.

Example 3. Which floor is le premier étage?

▼ **Show solution**

1. The ground floor is le rez-de-chaussée.

Answer: The floor above the ground floor (the American second floor).

PRACTICE

1. Easy Give the French: kitchen, bedroom, bathroom.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   la cuisine, la chambre, la salle de bains.

2. Easy Give the French: bed, chair, sofa.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   le lit, la chaise, le canapé.

3. Easy What does faire la vaisselle mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   To do the dishes.

4. Medium Translate: There is a rug under the table.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Il y a un tapis sous la table.

5. Medium Translate: We set the table and clear the table.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Nous mettons la table et nous débarrassons la table.

6. Medium Translate: My room is on the ground floor.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ma chambre est au rez-de-chaussée.

7. Hard Translate: On Saturdays, I tidy my room, my sister vacuums and my father mows the lawn.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Le samedi, je range ma chambre, ma sœur passe l'aspirateur et mon père tond la pelouse.

8. Hard Translate: Through wisdom is an house builded.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   C'est par la sagesse qu'une maison s'élève.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Calling a room une chambre when it is not a bedroom. A room in general is une pièce; une chambre is a bedroom.
- Thinking le premier étage is the ground floor. It is one floor up.
- Saying faire la cuisine for the kitchen. La cuisine is the kitchen; faire la cuisine is to cook.

Make it a game · Où est le chat?. Hide a toy cat (or any toy) somewhere in the house. The others search, asking only in French: Il est dans la cuisine? Il est sous le lit? The hider answers Tu chauffes (warmer) or Tu refroidis (colder) until it is found. The finder hides it next.

Scripture. “Through wisdom is an house builded; and by understanding it is established:” (Proverbs 24:3, KJV)

In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *C’est par la sagesse qu’une maison s’élève* Solomon teaches that a household is built by wisdom and established by understanding.

UNIT 9 · LA VIE QUOTIDIENNE: VERBES PRONOMINAUX ET MODAUX · LESSON 9.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

9.3 Je Veux, Je Peux, Je Dois: Modal Verbs

OBJECTIVES

- Conjugate vouloir, pouvoir and devoir in the present tense.
- Use each with an infinitive: Je veux partir. Tu peux venir? Nous devons travailler.
- Ask permission and make polite requests.
- Read Matthew 26:39 in French.

Warm-up. Three little verbs carry the weight of every choice: what I want, what I can do, and what I must do. When they disagree, which one wins? Today you learn them, and see how Christ answered that question.

WATCH

VOULOIR in the Present Tense - Mastering French Verbs

Learn French with FrenchPod101.com · 2:27

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=7XlzXFo9Hxo

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the charts. Conjugate vouloir aloud with the video.

Note: FrenchPod101: vouloir in the present tense, about two and a half minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Pouvoir (to be able to) - Present Tense (French verbs conjugated by Learn French With Alexa)

Learn French With Alexa · 5:12

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=k5gR0psPGYg

Session 2 or 3: pouvoir in the present tense.

KEY TERMS

vouloir
To want.

pouvoir
To be able to, can; also may (permission).

devoir
To have to, must; also to owe.

la coupe
The cup.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

vouloir
voo-LWAHR
verb
to want

pouvoir
poo-VWAHR
verb
to be able to, can

devoir
duh-VWAHR
verb
to have to, must; to owe

je veux
zhuh VUH
verb form
I want

je peux
zhuh PUH
verb form
I can, I may

je dois
zhuh DWAH
verb form
I must

sortir
sor-TEER
verb
to go out

partir
par-TEER
verb
to leave

mentir
mahn-TEER
verb
to lie

d'abord
dah-BOR
adverb
first

possible
poh-SEEBL
adjective
possible

la volonté
lah voh-lohn-TAY
la · faith
will

CORE IDEAS

The story. In the garden of Gethsemane, on the night he was betrayed, Jesus fell on his face and prayed: **Mon Père, s'il est possible, que cette coupe s'éloigne de moi! Toutefois, non pas ce que je veux, mais ce que tu veux.** O my Father, if it be possible, let this cup pass from me: nevertheless not as I will, but as thou wilt. He truly dreaded the cross, and yet he chose his Father's will. Je veux, tu veux: here vouloir, the verb of wanting, carries the whole battle.

How French works: vouloir and pouvoir. These two are twins: **vouloir: je veux, tu veux, il veut, nous voulons, vous voulez, ils veulent. pouvoir: je peux, tu peux, il**

peut, nous pouvons, vous pouvez, ils peuvent. Both take an infinitive: **Je veux apprendre le français. Tu peux m'aider? Nous ne pouvons pas venir.** Polite: **Je voudrais** (I would like), **Pourriez-vous ...?** (Could you ...?)

How French works: devoir. je dois, tu dois, il doit, nous devons, vous devez, ils doivent. With an infinitive it means must or have to: **Je dois faire mes devoirs. Nous devons partir.** Alone it means to owe: **Je te dois dix euros.** Les devoirs, homework, is literally the things you must do.

How French works: permission and requests. Est-ce que je peux sortir? May I go out? **Oui, tu peux. Non, tu dois finir tes devoirs. Tu veux jouer avec moi?** Do you want to play with me? **Vous voulez du café?** Would you like some coffee? Negatives go around the modal verb, not the infinitive: **Je ne veux pas partir. Il ne doit pas mentir.**

ACTIVITY

Le règlement de la maison (the house rules)

Write the house rules with devoir and pouvoir, and act out requests.

You will need

- Paper and markers

Steps

1. Write ten house rules with devoir and pouvoir: On doit dire merci. On ne doit pas mentir. On peut jouer après les devoirs.
2. Write five requests with pouvoir and five offers with vouloir: Est-ce que je peux …? Tu veux …?
3. Act out the requests with a parent, who answers Oui, tu peux or Non, tu dois d'abord …
4. Write three sentences about your own will and God's will, using vouloir.

Tips

- Write the Ten Commandments in simple French with devoir: Tu dois honorer ton père et ta mère.
- Interview your family: Qu'est-ce que tu veux faire plus tard? (when you grow up)

Check your work

☐ I conjugated the three modal verbs correctly.

☐ I wrote ten rules with an infinitive after the modal.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the charts of vouloir, pouvoir and devoir.
2. Copy five requests and five offers.
3. Copy Matthew 26:39 in French and English.

> **From history.** King Louis IX of France, Saint Louis, taught his son that to do God's will was the first duty of a king: in his last instructions he wrote that he should rather suffer every torment than commit a mortal sin.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can make all permission requests in French this week: Est-ce que je peux ...?

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Translate: Can you help me?

▼ **Show solution**

1. Pouvoir + infinitive.
2. Me becomes m' before aider.

Answer: Tu peux m'aider? (Peux-tu m'aider?)

Example 2. Translate: We must leave at eight o'clock.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Devoir + partir.

Answer: Nous devons partir à huit heures.

Example 3. Make negative: Ils veulent manger.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Ne ... pas around veulent.

Answer: Ils ne veulent pas manger.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Conjugate vouloir for je and tu.

▼ **Show answer**

je veux, tu veux.

2. Easy Conjugate pouvoir for il and nous.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   il peut, nous pouvons.

3. Easy Conjugate devoir for je.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   je dois.

4. Medium Translate: May I go out?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Est-ce que je peux sortir?

5. Medium Translate: They want to visit Quebec.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ils veulent visiter Québec.

6. Medium Translate: You (vous) must listen.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Vous devez écouter.

7. Hard Translate: I want to play, but I must do my homework, so I cannot come.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Je veux jouer, mais je dois faire mes devoirs, alors je ne peux pas venir.

8. Hard Translate: Not as I will, but as thou wilt.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Non pas ce que je veux, mais ce que tu veux.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Conjugating both verbs: je veux mange. The second verb stays in the infinitive: je veux manger.
- Writing ils peuvons or ils veulons. The forms are ils peuvent, ils veulent.
- Using je veux to ask politely in a shop. Use je voudrais.

Make it a game · Je peux? (may I?). Like Mother, may I? The leader stands at the far end. Each player asks: Est-ce que je peux faire trois pas? The leader answers Oui, tu peux or Non, tu dois faire un pas en arrière. Forget to ask, or ask wrongly, and go back to the start. The first to reach the leader wins.

Scripture. "And he went a little further, and fell on his face, and prayed, saying, O my Father, if it be possible, let this cup pass from me: nevertheless not as I will, but as thou wilt." (Matthew 26:39, KJV)

In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *non pas ce que je veux, mais ce que tu veux* In Gethsemane, Jesus asks that the cup pass from him, yet submits to his Father's will. Je veux and tu veux are forms of vouloir.

UNIT 10

Fêtes et Foi: Noël, Pâques et le Credo

Lesson 10.1 teaches the words of Advent and Christmas in France and Quebec, from la crèche to la messe de minuit and the bûche de Noël, with the regular -ir verbs, studies Georges de La Tour's candlelit painting of the boy Jesus with Joseph, and reads Luke 2:14 in French. Lesson 10.2 teaches Holy Week and Easter, Pâques, with the regular -re verbs and Matthew 28:6.

Lesson 10.3 conjugates croire and voir, learns the opening of the Apostles' Creed in French, Je crois en Dieu, le Père tout-puissant, and reads John 11:25. The unit challenge is a recitation of the Creed and a short talk on a feast of the Church, in French.

PREREQUISITES

- Units 1–9.

MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can name the words of Christmas and Easter in French.
- ☐ I can conjugate regular -ir verbs (finir) in the present tense.
- ☐ I can conjugate regular -re verbs (attendre) in the present tense.
- ☐ I can conjugate croire and voir.
- ☐ I can recite the opening of the Apostles' Creed in French.

OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **A Louis Segond 1910 Bible (print, or free online)**: Bible Gateway lists it as Louis Segond (LSG). Used all year.
- **Index cards and a box**: For the flashcard deck that grows every lesson.
- **A candle and a small crèche or Nativity picture**: For the Christmas lesson and the picture study.

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

LESSONS IN THIS UNIT

10.1	**Noël: Christmas and Regular -ir Verbs**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
10.2	**Pâques: Easter and Regular -re Verbs**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
10.3	**Je Crois: Croire, Voir and the Creed**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

Unit 10 test

Unit 10 test. Questions 1–2 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written. 50 points.

1. 5 pts

   Oral: Recite the opening of the Apostles' Creed in French, from Je crois en Dieu to la terre.

2. 5 pts

   Oral: Comment est-ce que ta famille fête Noël? (four sentences)

3. 5 pts

   Give the French: Christmas tree, Nativity scene, gift, Easter, Good Friday.

4. 5 pts

   Conjugate finir in the present tense.

5. 5 pts

   Conjugate attendre in the present tense.

6. 5 pts

   Complete: Nous (choisir) ___. Tu (répondre) ___. Ils (obéir) ___. J'(entendre) ___. Elle (vendre) ___.

7. 5 pts

   Conjugate croire and voir for je, nous and ils.

8. 5 pts

   Translate: I believe in God. We see the star.

9. 5 pts

   Describe Georges de La Tour's painting: who is in it, and where is the light?

10. 5 pts

    Copy Matthew 28:6 from Il n'est to ressuscité, and translate.

ANSWER KEY

1. Je crois en Dieu, le Père tout-puissant, Créateur du ciel et de la terre.
2. À Noël, nous allons à l'église. Nous décorons le sapin. Nous mangeons un bon repas en famille. Nous chantons des cantiques. (or similar)
3. le sapin de Noël, la crèche, le cadeau, Pâques, le Vendredi saint.
4. je finis, tu finis, il/elle/on finit, nous finissons, vous finissez, ils/elles finissent.
5. j'attends, tu attends, il/elle/on attend, nous attendons, vous attendez, ils/elles attendent.
6. choisissons; réponds; obéissent; entends; vend.
7. je crois, nous croyons, ils croient; je vois, nous voyons, ils voient.
8. Je crois en Dieu. Nous voyons l'étoile.
9. Saint Joseph, bent over, drills a hole in a beam of wood, and the boy Jesus holds a candle for him; the candle is the only light, and it shines through the child's fingers and lights his face.
10. Il n'est point ici; il est ressuscité. He is not here: for he is risen.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

UNIT CHALLENGE: UNE FÊTE CHRÉTIENNE (A CHRISTIAN FEAST)

Choose one feast of the Church year (Advent, Christmas, Epiphany, Holy Week, Easter, Ascension, Pentecost or All Saints) and give a three-minute talk in French: what it celebrates, its Bible story, how it is kept in France or Quebec (food, customs, music) and how your family keeps it. Then recite the Apostles' Creed in French as far as you can (at least to notre Seigneur).

LOOK FOR	WHAT IT MEANS
Content	Explains the feast, its story and its customs clearly.
Verbs	Uses -ir, -re, croire and voir correctly.
Creed	Recites the Creed in French to notre Seigneur or beyond.
Presentation	Speaks clearly and reverently.

10.1 Noël: Christmas and Regular -ir Verbs

OBJECTIVES

- Name the words of Advent and Christmas in France and Quebec.
- Conjugate regular -ir verbs (finir, choisir, obéir) in the present tense.
- Describe how a family celebrates Christmas.
- Read Luke 2:14 in French.

> **Warm-up.** In France, Christmas begins with Advent wreaths and Advent calendars, goes on with the crèche, filled with little clay figures called santons, and ends at the Epiphany with a cake that hides a tiny king. Today you learn the words of Christmas.

WATCH

Learn French Holidays - Christmas - Noël

Learn French with FrenchPod101.com · 3:17

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=G5684TLE71c

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the word list. Repeat each Christmas word.

Note: FrenchPod101: French holidays, Christmas (Noël), about three minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Comment les Français fêtent Noël et la nouvelle année ? - 5 minutes de français

Français avec Pierre · 4:59

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=p-72Rhio29Y

Session 2 or 3: a native speaker on how the French celebrate Christmas and the New Year. Turn on French subtitles.

KEY TERMS

l’Avent

Advent (m.): the four weeks before Christmas.

la crèche

The manger; also the Nativity scene.

les santons

Little clay figures for the crèche, from Provence.

obéir à

To obey (a regular -ir verb).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

Noël
noh-EL

le · feast

Christmas

l’Avent
lah-VAHN

le · feast

Advent

la crèche
lah KRESH

la · feast

manger, Nativity scene

l’ange
LAHNZH

le · feast

angel

le berger
luh behr-ZHAY

le · feast

shepherd

l’étoile
lay-TWAHL

la · feast

star

le cadeau
luh kah-DOH

le · feast

gift

le sapin
luh sah-PAN

le · feast

fir tree, Christmas tree

finir
fee-NEER
verb
to finish

choisir
shwah-ZEER
verb
to choose

obéir à
oh-bay-EER ah
verb
to obey

bénir
bay-NEER
verb
to bless

CORE IDEAS

The story. On the night Christ was born in Bethlehem, shepherds were keeping watch over their flocks. An angel stood by them, and suddenly there was with the angel a multitude of the heavenly host praising God: **Gloire à Dieu dans les lieux très hauts, Et paix sur la terre parmi les hommes qu'il agrée!** Luke tells us too that the child grew up in Nazareth, subject to Joseph and Mary: the Son of God learned to obey.

How French works: Christmas words. Noël (Christmas), **Joyeux Noël!** (Merry Christmas!), **l'Avent**, **la couronne de l'Avent** (Advent wreath), **la crèche**, **l'ange** (m., angel), **le berger** (shepherd), **les Rois mages** (the Wise Men), **l'étoile** (f., star), **le sapin** (Christmas tree), **le cadeau** (gift), **le cantique** or **le chant de Noël** (carol), **la messe de minuit** (midnight Mass), **le réveillon** (the Christmas Eve feast), **la bûche de Noël** (Yule log cake), **l'Épiphanie** (f., Epiphany, January 6), **la galette des rois** (kings' cake).

How French works: regular -ir verbs. The second family of French verbs drops -ir and adds **-is, -is, -it, -issons, -issez, -issent**: **finir** (to finish): **je finis, tu finis, il finit, nous finissons, vous finissez, ils finissent.** Others: **choisir** (to choose), **obéir à** (to obey), **réfléchir** (to think, reflect), **grandir** (to grow up), **bénir** (to bless), **remplir** (to fill), **réussir** (to succeed). **Les enfants obéissent à leurs parents. Le prêtre bénit la crèche.**

How French works: Christmas in France. Families set up **la crèche** with **santons** from Provence: not only Mary, Joseph and the shepherds, but the baker, the miller and the fishwife of the village, all coming to the manger. Many go to **la messe de minuit** and then share **le réveillon**. On January 6, the family shares **la galette des**

rois: whoever finds the little **fève** hidden inside is king or queen for the day and wears a paper crown. In Quebec, families sing **Il est né, le divin Enfant** and **Minuit, chrétiens**, the carol known in English as O Holy Night.

PICTURE STUDY



Saint Joseph the Carpenter, Georges de La Tour, about 1642–1644 · Oil on canvas · Musée du Louvre, Paris

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Georges de La Tour worked in Lorraine, in eastern France, during the terrible Thirty Years' War. He was famous in his lifetime and then forgotten for nearly three hundred years, until scholars rediscovered his paintings in the twentieth century. This one was given to the Louvre in 1948. The child holds the light for the old man's work, and his face is the brightest thing in the picture: the light of the world in a carpenter's shop. Some viewers see in the beam of wood and the drill a foreshadowing of the cross.

Look closely

- Where is the light coming from? What does it shine on most brightly?
- Look at the child's hand in front of the flame. What do you see?
- Find the tools on the floor. Name them in French: le marteau, le ciseau, les copeaux.
- Who is working, and who is helping? Who is looking at whom?

Talk about it

1. Why might La Tour make the child's face the brightest place in the painting?
2. What does this painting say about ordinary work?

ACTIVITY

La crèche

Set up a Nativity scene and describe it in French.

You will need

- A Nativity set, or paper figures you draw and cut out
- Cards for labels

Steps

1. Set up a crèche (or draw one) with Mary, Joseph, the baby Jesus, the shepherds, the angel, the ox and the donkey, and later the Wise Men.
2. Label every figure in French: la Vierge Marie, saint Joseph, l'Enfant Jésus, le berger, l'ange, le bœuf, l'âne, les Rois mages.
3. Add santons in the Provençal way: a baker, a fisherman, a farmer, each bringing a gift.
4. Tell the Christmas story in ten French sentences, using at least three -ir verbs.

Tips

- Bake or buy a galette des rois with a hidden bean for Epiphany.
- Learn the first verse of Il est né, le divin Enfant.

Check your work

☐ I labeled ten figures in French.

☐ I conjugated three -ir verbs correctly.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the Christmas words.
2. Copy the chart of finir and the list of -ir verbs.
3. Copy Luke 2:14 in French and English.

From history. Minuit, chrétiens (O Holy Night) was written in 1847 by Placide Cappeau, a wine merchant of Roquemaure in Provence, at the request of his parish priest, and set to music the same year by Adolphe Adam. It became one of the most loved carols in the French-speaking world.

At home in French. French-speaking families can sing Il est né, le divin Enfant together in Advent, and say grace in French at the Christmas meal.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Conjugate choisir for nous and ils.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Stem chois-.
2. -issons, -issent.

Answer: nous choisissons, ils choisissent.

Example 2. Translate: The children obey their parents.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Obéir à + leurs parents.

Answer: Les enfants obéissent à leurs parents.

Example 3. Translate: On Christmas Eve, we go to midnight Mass.

▼ **Show solution**

1. La veille de Noël.
2. Aller à la messe de minuit.

Answer: La veille de Noël, nous allons à la messe de minuit.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Give the French: Merry Christmas!

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Joyeux Noël!

2. Easy Give the French: the star, the angel, the shepherd.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   l’étoile, l’ange, le berger.

3. Easy Conjugate finir for je and il.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   je finis, il finit.

4. Medium Complete: Vous (choisir) ___ un cadeau. Ils (grandir) ___.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   choisissez; grandissent.

5. Medium What is la galette des rois?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The kings’ cake eaten at Epiphany, with a small charm (la fève) hidden inside.

6. Medium Translate: The priest blesses the crèche.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Le prêtre bénit la crèche.

7. Hard Translate: We finish our gifts and we choose a tree.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Nous finissons nos cadeaux et nous choisissons un sapin.

8. Hard Translate: Glory to God in the highest, and on earth peace.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Gloire à Dieu dans les lieux très hauts, et paix sur la terre.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Writing nous finons. -ir verbs add -iss- in the plural: nous finissons.
- Saying obéir mes parents. Obéir takes à: obéir à mes parents.

- Writing noël with a small n. Noël, the feast, takes a capital.

> **Make it a game · La fève (the bean).** Hide a small bean or button under one of several cups. The players take turns lifting a cup and must say a sentence with an -ir verb before lifting: Je choisis cette tasse! Whoever finds the bean is king or queen and gives the next round's commands in French.

> **Scripture.** "Glory to God in the highest, and on earth peace, good will toward men." (Luke 2:14, KJV)
>
> In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *Gloire à Dieu dans les lieux très hauts, Et paix sur la terre* The angels praise God at the birth of Christ. Gloire is the first word of the great hymn of the Church, Gloire à Dieu.

UNIT 10 · FÊTES ET FOI: NOËL, PÂQUES ET LE CREDO · LESSON 10.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

10.2 Pâques: Easter and Regular -re Verbs

OBJECTIVES

- Name the days of Holy Week and the words of Easter.
- Conjugate regular -re verbs (attendre, entendre, répondre) in the present tense.
- Give the Easter greeting and its answer in French.
- Read Matthew 28:6 in French.

> **Warm-up.** French children are told that on Holy Thursday the church bells fall silent because they have flown away to Rome, and that on Easter morning they fly back, ringing, and drop chocolate eggs in the gardens. Today: the greatest feast of the year.

WATCH

Learn French Holidays - Easter - Pâques

Learn French with FrenchPod101.com · 3:46

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=iyPIwwZ7wLY

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the word list. Repeat each Easter word.

Note: FrenchPod101: French holidays, Easter (Pâques), about four minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Happy Easter in French: Joyeuses Pâques 2019

Learn French With Alexa · 1:34

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ZMw4Jg9xuZU

Session 2 or 3: a short Easter greeting.

KEY TERMS

Pâques
Easter (from the Hebrew pesach, Passover).

la Semaine sainte
Holy Week.

ressuscité
Risen (from the dead).

attendre
To wait for (a regular -re verb).

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

Pâques
PAHK
les · feast
Easter

la Semaine sainte
lah suh-men SANT
la · feast
Holy Week

le Vendredi saint
luh vahn-druh-dee SAN
le · feast
Good Friday

la croix
lah KRWAH
la · faith
cross

le tombeau
luh tohm-BOH
le · faith
tomb

ressuscité
ray-sew-see-TAY
adjective
risen

la cloche
lah KLOSH
la · feast
bell

l'agneau
lah-NYOH
le · faith
lamb

attendre
ah-TAHNDR
verb
to wait for

entendre
ahn-TAHNDR
verb
to hear

répondre
ray-POHNDR
verb
to answer

vendre
VAHNDR
verb
to sell

CORE IDEAS

The story. Very early on the first day of the week, the women came to the tomb with spices, wondering who would roll away the stone. There had been a great earthquake: an angel of the Lord sat on the stone, and his face was like lightning. He said to the women: **Il n'est point ici; il est ressuscité, comme il l'avait dit. Venez, voyez le lieu où il était couché.** He is not here: for he is risen, as he said. Come, see the place where the Lord lay.

How French works: Holy Week and Easter. le Carême (Lent), **la Semaine sainte**, **le dimanche des Rameaux** (Palm Sunday), **le Jeudi saint** (Maundy Thursday), **le**

Vendredi saint (Good Friday), **le Samedi saint**, **Pâques** (Easter: **Joyeuses Pâques!**), **la croix** (cross), **le tombeau** (tomb), **la pierre** (stone), **la résurrection**, **les cloches** (bells), **les œufs de Pâques**, **l'agneau** (m., lamb). The ancient greeting: **Christ est ressuscité!** The answer: **Il est vraiment ressuscité!**

How French works: regular -re verbs. The third family drops -re and adds **-s, -s, —, -ons, -ez, -ent** (nothing at all for il): **attendre** (to wait for): **j'attends, tu attends, il attend, nous attendons, vous attendez, ils attendent.** Others: **entendre** (to hear), **répondre à** (to answer), **vendre** (to sell), **descendre** (to go down), **rendre** (to give back), **perdre** (to lose). In il attend, the d is silent; in ils attendent, you hear it.

How French works: the story in French. Read it with the new verbs: **Les femmes attendent le matin. Elles descendent au tombeau. Elles entendent l'ange. L'ange répond: Il n'est point ici. Elles ne perdent pas de temps: elles courent dire la nouvelle aux disciples.** Attendre means to wait for, with no word for for: **J'attends le bus. Nous attendons Pâques.**

ACTIVITY

Le chemin de Pâques (the Easter path)

Make a path of the events of Holy Week, told in French.

You will need

- Eight cards or paper plates
- Markers

Steps

1. Make eight cards, one for each event: les Rameaux, la Cène (the Last Supper), le jardin, la croix, le tombeau, la pierre roulée, les femmes et l'ange, Jésus et les disciples.
2. On each card, draw the scene and write one or two French sentences in the present tense.
3. Lay the cards out as a path through the house and walk it with your family, reading each card aloud.
4. End at the last card with the greeting: Christ est ressuscité! Il est vraiment ressuscité!

Tips

- Decorate eggs with French words: la vie, la joie, ressuscité.
- Use at least four -re verbs on the cards.

Check your work

☐ I told the story in eight cards in French.

☐ I used four -re verbs correctly.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the words of Holy Week and Easter.
2. Copy the chart of attendre and the list of -re verbs.
3. Copy Matthew 28:6 in French and English.

> **From history.** In France, church bells are silent from Holy Thursday until the Easter Vigil, in mourning for Christ's death; children are told they have flown to Rome. The bells of Notre-Dame de Paris, silent after the fire of 2019, rang out again for its reopening in December 2024.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can greet one another on Easter morning with Christ est ressuscité! Il est vraiment ressuscité!

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Conjugate entendre for je and ils.

▼ **Show solution**

1. J' before a vowel.
2. -s and -ent.

Answer: j'entends, ils entendent.

Example 2. Translate: She answers the angel.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Répondre à.
2. Il/elle: no ending.

Answer: Elle répond à l'ange.

Example 3. Translate: We are waiting for Easter.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Attendre takes no word for for.

Answer: Nous attendons Pâques.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Give the French: Happy Easter!

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Joyeuses Pâques!

2. Easy Give the French: Good Friday; Palm Sunday.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   le Vendredi saint; le dimanche des Rameaux.

3. Easy Conjugate attendre for tu and il.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   tu attends, il attend.

4. Medium Complete: Vous (vendre) ___ des œufs. Nous (descendre) ___. Il (perdre) ___.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   vendez; descendons; perd.

5. Medium What is the answer to Christ est ressuscité!?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Il est vraiment ressuscité!

6. Medium Translate: I hear the bells.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   J’entends les cloches.

7. Hard Translate: The women go down to the tomb and they hear the angel.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Les femmes descendent au tombeau et elles entendent l’ange.

8. Hard Translate: He is not here: for he is risen, as he said.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Il n’est point ici; il est ressuscité, comme il l’avait dit.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Adding -t for il: il attendt. The il form of -re verbs ends in d with nothing added: il attend.
- Saying j'attends pour le bus. Attendre takes no preposition: j'attends le bus.
- Writing Joyeux Pâques. Pâques is feminine plural in greetings: Joyeuses Pâques.

> **Make it a game · La chasse aux œufs (the egg hunt).** Hide plastic eggs, each with a slip of paper inside: an -re or -ir verb and a subject (nous / attendre). The finder must conjugate it correctly to keep the egg. Whoever keeps the most eggs wins.

> **Scripture.** "He is not here: for he is risen, as he said. Come, see the place where the Lord lay." (Matthew 28:6, KJV)
>
> In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *Il n'est point ici; il est ressuscité, comme il l'avait dit.* The angel at the empty tomb tells the women that Christ is risen, as he said.

UNIT 10 · FÊTES ET FOI: NOËL, PÂQUES ET LE CREDO · LESSON 10.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

10.3 Je Crois: Croire, Voir and the Creed

OBJECTIVES

- Conjugate croire and voir in the present tense.
- Use croire en, croire à and croire que.
- Recite the opening of the Apostles' Creed in French.
- Read John 11:25 in French.

> **Warm-up.** For nearly two thousand years, Christians have confessed their faith in the same words, the Apostles' Creed. French Christians say it every Sunday beginning Je crois en Dieu. Today you learn to say it with them.

WATCH

Croire (to believe) — Past, Present & Future (French verbs conjugated by Learn French With Alexa)

Learn French With Alexa · 9:28

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=9lrpdlQXo1M

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the charts. Conjugate croire with Alexa; stop at the present tense and come back for the rest later in the year.

Note: Learn French With Alexa: croire (to believe), past, present and future, about nine and a half minutes.

KEY TERMS

croire
To believe (irregular).

voir
To see (irregular).

le Credo
The Creed, from Latin credo, I believe.

tout-puissant
Almighty.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

croire
KRWAHR
verb
to believe

voir
VWAHR
verb
to see

je crois
zhuh KRWAH
verb form
I believe

nous croyons
noo krwah-YOHN
verb form
we believe

tout-puissant
too-pwee-SAHN
adjective
almighty

le Créateur
luh kray-ah-TUHR
le · faith
the Creator

le ciel
luh SYEL
le · faith
heaven, sky

la terre
lah TEHR
la · faith
earth

le Seigneur
luh seh-NYUHR
le · faith
the Lord

la résurrection
lah ray-zew-rek-SYOHN
la · faith
resurrection

le Credo
luh kray-DOH
le · faith
the Creed

vide
VEED
adjective
empty

CORE IDEAS

The story. When Jesus came to Bethany, Lazarus had been four days in the tomb. Martha ran to meet him: Lord, if thou hadst been here, my brother had not died. Jesus answered: **Je suis la résurrection et la vie. Celui qui croit en moi vivra, quand même il serait mort.** Then he asked her: Crois-tu cela? Believest thou this? She said: Yea, Lord: I believe. And at the tomb, Jesus called, Lazarus, come forth, and the dead man came out.

How French works: croire and voir. These two follow the same pattern: **croire: je crois, tu crois, il croit, nous croyons, vous croyez, ils croient. voir: je vois, tu vois, il voit, nous voyons, vous voyez, ils voient.** The i becomes y in nous and vous. **Je vois l'église. Nous croyons en Dieu. Tu vois? Tu crois?**

How French works: croire en, croire à, croire que. croire en + a person: to believe in, to trust: **Je crois en Dieu. Je crois en Jésus-Christ. croire à** + a thing: to believe

that something is real: **Je crois à la résurrection. croire que** + a sentence: to think that: **Je crois qu'il va pleuvoir.** And simply **croire quelqu'un**: to believe what someone says: **Je te crois.**

How French works: the Creed. The French Apostles' Creed begins: **Je crois en Dieu, le Père tout-puissant, Créateur du ciel et de la terre. Et en Jésus-Christ, son Fils unique, notre Seigneur, qui a été conçu du Saint-Esprit, est né de la Vierge Marie, a souffert sous Ponce Pilate, a été crucifié, est mort et a été enseveli, est descendu aux enfers, le troisième jour est ressuscité des morts, est monté aux cieux, est assis à la droite de Dieu le Père tout-puissant, d'où il viendra juger les vivants et les morts.** Notice how many verbs are in the past tense with être (est né, est mort, est ressuscité): you will learn that tense in the next unit.

ACTIVITY

Le Credo en images (the Creed in pictures)

Illustrate and memorize the Creed in French.

You will need

- Eight cards
- Colored pencils

Steps

1. Copy the first part of the Creed onto eight cards, one phrase per card: Je crois en Dieu … Créateur du ciel et de la terre … Et en Jésus-Christ …
2. Draw a small picture on each: the sky and earth, the manger, the cross, the empty tomb, the ascension.
3. Say one card a day aloud, adding a new one each day, until you can say all eight from memory.
4. Recite the Creed for your family at the end of the week.

Tips

- Finish the Creed: Je crois en l'Esprit-Saint, à la sainte Église universelle, à la communion des saints, à la rémission des péchés, à la résurrection de la chair, à la vie éternelle. Amen.
- Compare the French Creed line by line with the English.

Check your work

☐ I recited the Creed in French to notre Seigneur or beyond.

☐ I conjugated croire and voir correctly.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the charts of croire and voir.
2. Copy the three uses: croire en, croire à, croire que.
3. Copy the Creed in French as far as les morts.
4. Copy John 11:25 in French and English.

From history. The Creed was carried into French very early: by the 800s, the councils of Charlemagne's empire required every Christian to know the Creed and the Lord's Prayer by heart, and parents and godparents had to teach them to their children.

At home in French. French-speaking families can say the Creed together in French on Sundays for the rest of the year.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Conjugate croire for nous and ils.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Nous: i becomes y.
2. Ils croient.

Answer: nous croyons, ils croient.

Example 2. Translate: I believe in God the Father almighty.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Croire en + a person.

Answer: Je crois en Dieu, le Père tout-puissant.

Example 3. Translate: Do you see the star? Yes, I see it.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Voir: tu vois, je vois.
2. It: la, before the verb.

Answer: Tu vois l'étoile? Oui, je la vois.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Conjugate voir for je and tu.

▼ **Show answer**

je vois, tu vois.

2. Easy What does tout-puissant mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Almighty.

3. Easy Translate: I believe you.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Je te crois.

4. Medium Complete: Vous (voir) ___. Ils (croire) ___. Nous (voir) ___.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   voyez; croient; voyons.

5. Medium En, à or que? Je crois ___ la vie éternelle. Je crois ___ Jésus-Christ. Je crois ___ il est ici.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   à; en; qu'.

6. Medium Translate: Creator of heaven and earth.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Créateur du ciel et de la terre.

7. Hard Translate: We believe in the resurrection, and we see the empty tomb.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Nous croyons à la résurrection, et nous voyons le tombeau vide.

8. Hard Translate: I am the resurrection, and the life: he that believeth in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Je suis la résurrection et la vie. Celui qui croit en moi vivra, quand même il serait mort.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Writing nous croions. The i becomes y: nous croyons.
- Writing ils croyent. The ils form keeps i: ils croient.
- Saying je crois dans Dieu. Say je crois en Dieu.

Make it a game · Je vois quelque chose (I spy). One player says: Je vois quelque chose de rouge! (I see something red!) The others ask: C'est la pomme? Tu vois le livre? until someone guesses. The guesser spies next. Every question must use voir.

Scripture. "Jesus said unto her, I am the resurrection, and the life: he that believeth in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live:" (John 11:25, KJV)

In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *Je suis la résurrection et la vie. Celui qui croit en moi vivra* Before raising Lazarus, Jesus declares that he is the resurrection and the life. Croit is from croire.

UNIT 11

Le Passé: Le Passé Composé

Lesson 11.1 forms the passé composé with avoir and the past participles of regular verbs (parlé, fini, attendu), with time words such as hier and la semaine dernière, and reads 2 Timothy 4:7 in French. Lesson 11.2 learns the irregular past participles of the great verbs, avoir, être, faire, prendre, voir, boire, croire, vouloir, pouvoir, devoir, with 1 John 1:1.

Lesson 11.3 teaches the verbs that take être in the passé composé (aller, venir, arriver, partir, naître, mourir and the rest of the house of être) and their agreement (elle est allée), studies the Bayeux Tapestry's scene of Harold's oath, and reads John 1:11. The unit challenge is a story of a real event told in the past tense.

PREREQUISITES

- Units 1–10.

MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can form the passé composé with avoir for regular verbs.
- ☐ I can use twelve irregular past participles.
- ☐ I can form the passé composé with être and make the participle agree.
- ☐ I can make the passé composé negative.
- ☐ I can tell a story of what happened yesterday or long ago.

OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **A Louis Segond 1910 Bible (print, or free online)**: Bible Gateway lists it as Louis Segond (LSG). Used all year.
- **Index cards and a box**: For the flashcard deck that grows every lesson.
- **A long strip of paper (a roll of receipt paper or taped sheets)**: For a tapestry-style picture story (Lesson 11.3 and the unit challenge).

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

LESSONS IN THIS UNIT

11.1 J'ai Parlé: The Passé Composé with Avoir	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
11.2 J'ai Vu, J'ai Fait: Irregular Past Participles	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
11.3 Je Suis Venu: The Passé Composé with Être	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

Unit 11 test

Unit 11 test. Questions 1–2 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written. 50 points.

1. 5 pts

   Oral: Qu’est-ce que tu as fait hier? (five sentences in the passé composé)

2. 5 pts

   Oral: Tell the parent three things you did last week and one thing you did not do.

3. 5 pts

   Give the past participle: parler, finir, attendre, choisir, vendre.

4. 5 pts

   Give the past participle: faire, voir, prendre, avoir, être.

5. 5 pts

   Write in the passé composé: Je mange. Nous finissons. Ils entendent.

6. 5 pts

   Write in the passé composé: Elle va à Paris. Nous arrivons. Ils partent.

7. 5 pts

   Make negative: J’ai vu le film. Elle est venue.

8. 5 pts

   Translate: Yesterday, we did our homework and we went to church.

9. 5 pts

   What does the scene of the Bayeux Tapestry show, and why does it matter for the story of 1066?

10. 5 pts

    Copy 2 Timothy 4:7 in French and translate.

ANSWER KEY

1. Hier, j'ai mangé du pain à sept heures. J'ai prié avec ma famille. J'ai étudié le français. Je suis allé(e) au parc. J'ai lu un livre. (or similar)
2. La semaine dernière, j'ai joué au foot, j'ai vu mes grands-parents et je suis allé(e) à l'église. Je n'ai pas fait mes devoirs le samedi. (or similar)
3. parlé, fini, attendu, choisi, vendu.
4. fait, vu, pris, eu, été.
5. J'ai mangé. Nous avons fini. Ils ont entendu.
6. Elle est allée à Paris. Nous sommes arrivé(e)s. Ils sont partis.
7. Je n'ai pas vu le film. Elle n'est pas venue.
8. Hier, nous avons fait nos devoirs et nous sommes allé(e)s à l'église.
9. Harold, standing between two reliquaries, swears an oath to Duke William, who sits on a throne; the Normans said Harold broke this oath when he became king of England, which William used to justify his invasion.
10. J'ai combattu le bon combat, j'ai achevé la course, j'ai gardé la foi. I have fought a good fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the faith.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

UNIT CHALLENGE: LA TAPISSERIE (THE TAPESTRY)

Choose a real event: a family journey, a holiday, a day you will never forget, or a story from history or the Bible. Draw it as a picture strip in the style of the Bayeux Tapestry, at least eight scenes, with a short French caption above each in the passé composé (Nous sommes partis à six heures. Nous avons pris le train ...). Then tell the whole story aloud in at least fifteen sentences.

LOOK FOR	WHAT IT MEANS
Passé composé with avoir	Forms at least eight verbs with avoir correctly.
Passé composé with être	Forms at least four verbs with être, with agreement.
Irregular participles	Uses at least five irregular participles correctly.
Presentation	Tells the story clearly in order, with time words.

11.1 J'ai Parlé: The Passé Composé with Avoir

OBJECTIVES

- Form the passé composé with avoir and a past participle.
- Make the past participles of regular -er, -ir and -re verbs.
- Use time words for the past: hier, la semaine dernière, il y a deux jours.
- Read 2 Timothy 4:7 in French.

> **Warm-up.** So far, everything you can say in French happens now or soon. But stories happen in the past. Today you learn the tense the French use every day to say what happened: the passé composé.

WATCH

Learn French: know the passé composé with Avoir under 5 minutes.

Learn French With Alexa · 5:09

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Y67chASdUCE

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the explanation. Say three things you did yesterday.

Note: Learn French With Alexa: the passé composé with avoir, in under five minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Group 1 Regular French Verbs ending in "ER" (Passé Composé - Past Tense)

Learn French With Alexa · 12:30

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=QS3Hm7gnifE

Session 2 or 3: many -er verbs in the passé composé.

KEY TERMS

le passé composé

The compound past: avoir or être + past participle.

le participe passé

The past participle: parlé, fini, attendu.

l'auxiliaire

The helping verb (m.): avoir or être.

le combat

The fight, the battle.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

le passé composé
luh pah-SAY kohm-poh-ZAY

le · grammar

the compound past

le participe passé
luh par-tee-SEEP pah-SAY

le · grammar

past participle

hier
YEHR

adverb

yesterday

hier soir
yehr SWAHR

phrase

last night

avant-hier
ah-vahn-TYEHR

adverb

the day before yesterday

dernier / dernière
dehr-NYAY / dehr-NYEHR

adjective

last

il y a (+ time)
eel-yah

phrase

ago

déjà
day-ZHAH

adverb

already

ne … jamais
nuh … zhah-MEH
negative
never

achever
ahsh-VAY
verb
to finish, complete

garder
gar-DAY
verb
to keep

la course
lah KOORS
la · faith
race, course

CORE IDEAS

The story. Near the end of his life, in prison in Rome, Paul wrote his last letter to Timothy, his son in the faith. He knew he would soon be put to death, and he looked back on his life without fear: **J'ai combattu le bon combat, j'ai achevé la course, j'ai gardé la foi.** I have fought a good fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the faith. Three verbs, all in the passé composé: j'ai combattu, j'ai achevé, j'ai gardé.

How French works: the passé composé. Two parts: the present of **avoir** + the **past participle: j'ai parlé, tu as parlé, il a parlé, nous avons parlé, vous avez parlé, ils ont parlé.** It translates three English forms: **j'ai parlé** = I spoke, I have spoken, I did speak. **Hier, j'ai mangé une pomme. Nous avons regardé un film.**

How French works: regular past participles. -er → -é: parler → parlé, manger → mangé, aimer → aimé. **-ir → -i:** finir → fini, choisir → choisi, obéir → obéi. **-re → -u:** attendre → attendu, entendre → entendu, vendre → vendu, répondre → répondu. The -é of the participle sounds exactly like the -er of the infinitive, so listen for the auxiliary: **j'ai parlé** (past) vs. **je vais parler** (future).

How French works: negatives and time words. Ne … pas goes around the auxiliary: **Je n'ai pas mangé. Ils n'ont pas fini.** Questions: **Tu as fini? As-tu fini? Qu'est-ce que tu as fait?** Time words: **hier** (yesterday), **hier soir** (last night), **avant-hier** (the day before yesterday), **la semaine dernière** (last week), **l'année dernière** (last year), **il y a deux jours** (two days ago), **déjà** (already), **ne … jamais** (never).

ACTIVITY

Le journal intime (the diary)

Keep a diary in the past tense for a week.

You will need

- Your French notebook

Steps

1. Every evening this week, write five sentences in the passé composé about your day: Aujourd'hui, j'ai étudié les maths. J'ai joué du piano. J'ai aidé ma mère.
2. Use at least one -ir and one -re verb each day.
3. Add one negative sentence each day: Je n'ai pas regardé la télé.
4. At the end of the week, read the diary aloud to your family.

Tips

- Interview a grandparent about his or her childhood and write five sentences: Il a habité à ..., il a travaillé ...
- Write a thank-you prayer for the day in the past tense.

Check your work

☐ I wrote twenty-five sentences in the passé composé.

☐ I formed -er, -ir and -re participles correctly.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the passé composé of parler in all six persons.
2. Copy the rule for regular participles with three examples each.
3. Copy the past time words.
4. Copy 2 Timothy 4:7 in French and English.

From history. Spoken French has almost stopped using its old literary past, the passé simple (il parla, il fut), which you see in the Louis Segond (il se leva, il pria). In conversation, the passé composé has taken its place, but the passé simple lives on in books and fairy tales.

At home in French. French-speaking families can ask Qu'est-ce que tu as fait aujourd'hui? at dinner every night this week.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Write in the passé composé: Tu choisis un livre.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Tu as.
2. Choisir → choisi.

Answer: Tu as choisi un livre.

Example 2. Make negative: Nous avons entendu la cloche.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Ne … pas around avons.

Answer: Nous n'avons pas entendu la cloche.

Example 3. Translate: Last week, my parents sold the car.

▼ **Show solution**

1. La semaine dernière.
2. Vendre → vendu.

Answer: La semaine dernière, mes parents ont vendu la voiture.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Give the past participle: aimer, finir, vendre.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   aimé, fini, vendu.

2. Easy What is the helping verb in j’ai parlé?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   avoir (j’ai).

3. Easy Translate: yesterday; last year.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   hier; l’année dernière.

4. Medium Write in the passé composé: Elle écoute la radio.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Elle a écouté la radio.

5. Medium Write in the passé composé: Ils répondent à la question.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ils ont répondu à la question.

6. Medium Translate: I have already finished.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   J’ai déjà fini.

7. Hard Translate: Two days ago, we waited for the bus, but we did not find our tickets.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Il y a deux jours, nous avons attendu le bus, mais nous n’avons pas trouvé nos billets.

8. Hard Translate: I have fought a good fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the faith.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   J’ai combattu le bon combat, j’ai achevé la course, j’ai gardé la foi.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Leaving out the auxiliary: je parlé. You need avoir: j'ai parlé.
- Putting pas after the participle: j'ai mangé pas. Say je n'ai pas mangé.
- Writing finé or attendé. -ir verbs give -i (fini) and -re verbs give -u (attendu).

> **Make it a game · Hier ou demain?.** The parent says a sentence in the passé composé or the near future (J'ai mangé! Je vais manger!). The student shouts Hier! or Demain! and then changes the sentence to the other time. Ten right in a row wins.

> **Scripture.** "I have fought a good fight, I have finished my course, I have kept the faith:" (2 Timothy 4:7, KJV)
>
> In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *J'ai combattu le bon combat, j'ai achevé la course, j'ai gardé la foi.* Paul, about to be martyred, looks back on a life of faithfulness. All three verbs are in the passé composé with avoir.

UNIT 11 · LE PASSÉ: LE PASSÉ COMPOSÉ · LESSON 11.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

11.2 J'Ai Vu, J'Ai Fait: Irregular Past Participles

OBJECTIVES

- Learn the irregular past participles of fifteen common verbs.
- Use them in the passé composé with avoir.
- Ask and answer questions about the past.
- Read 1 John 1:1 in French.

> **Warm-up.** The verbs you use most, to have, to be, to do, to see, to take, are the ones that break the rules. Their past participles are short and strange: eu, été, fait, vu, pris. Learn them once and you will use them every day.

WATCH

Group 3 Irregular French Verbs (Passé Composé - Past Tense)

Learn French With Alexa · 9:50

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=nuL_vVc11bk

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the list. Say each participle with Alexa and make a sentence.

Note: Learn French With Alexa: irregular French verbs in the passé composé, about ten minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Group 2 Regular French Verbs ending in "IR" (Passé Composé)

Learn French With Alexa · 7:52

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=itZpHVUSkm4

Session 2 or 3: regular -ir verbs in the passé composé, for review.

KEY TERMS

irrégulier
Irregular: not following the pattern.

contempler
To gaze upon, behold.

la parole de vie
The Word of life.

dès le commencement
From the beginning.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

eu
EW
participle
had (avoir)

été
ay-TAY
participle
been (être)

fait
FEH
participle
done, made (faire)

vu
VEW
participle
seen (voir)

pris
PREE
participle
taken (prendre)

mis
MEE
participle
put (mettre)

dit
DEE
participle
said (dire)

écrit
ay-KREE
participle
written (écrire)

lu
LEW
participle
read (lire)

bu
BEW
participle
drunk (boire)

le témoin
luh tay-MWAN
le · faith
witness

toucher
too-SHAY
verb
to touch

CORE IDEAS

The story. In his old age the apostle John wrote to churches being told that Jesus had not truly come in the flesh. John answered as an eyewitness: **Ce qui était dès le commencement, ce que nous avons entendu, ce que nous avons vu de nos yeux, ce que nous avons contemplé et que nos mains ont touché, concernant la parole de vie.** We heard him, we saw him, we touched him. The Christian faith rests on things that happened, and that witnesses saw: nous avons vu.

How French works: participles in -u. avoir → eu (said like the letter u), **voir → vu**, **boire → bu**, **croire → cru**, **lire → lu** (to read), **vouloir → voulu**, **pouvoir → pu**, **devoir**

→ **dû**, **connaître** → **connu** (to know). **J’ai eu de la chance** (I was lucky). **Nous avons vu la tour Eiffel. Il a bu du lait. Tu as lu ce livre?**

How French works: participles in -is, -it and others. prendre → **pris** (and appris, compris), **mettre** → **mis** (to put), **faire** → **fait**, **dire** → **dit** (to say), **écrire** → **écrit** (to write), and **être** → **été. J’ai pris le train. Elle a mis la table. Qu’est-ce que tu as fait? Il a dit merci. J’ai écrit une lettre. J’ai été malade.**

How French works: questions about the past. Qu’est-ce que tu as fait ce week-end? Tu as vu le match? Où as-tu mis mes clés? Qu’est-ce que vous avez pris? Tu as déjà lu Les Misérables? Answer with the same participle: **Oui, je l’ai vu. Non, je ne l’ai jamais lu.**

ACTIVITY

Le témoin (the eyewitness)

Report an event as an eyewitness, using irregular participles.

You will need

- Your French notebook
- A short video or a family event to watch

Steps

1. Watch a short family event (a meal being cooked, a game, a walk) and take notes.
2. Write a report of ten sentences as an eyewitness, using at least eight irregular participles: J'ai vu ..., Papa a mis ..., Nous avons bu ..., Il a dit ...
3. Read the report to someone who was not there and answer their questions in the past: Qu'est-ce qu'il a fait?
4. Compare your report with another eyewitness's. Did you see the same things?

Tips

- Write John's eyewitness words in your own French: J'ai vu Jésus. J'ai entendu ...
- Make flashcards of the fifteen participles.

Check your work

☐ I used eight irregular participles correctly.

☐ I asked and answered questions in the past.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the fifteen irregular participles in two groups.
2. Write one sentence with each.
3. Copy 1 John 1:1 in French and English.

> **From history.** The Bayeux Tapestry tells the story of 1066 as eyewitness news for people who could not read: about seventy meters of linen embroidered in wool, with short Latin captions above the pictures. It was probably made by English embroiderers within ten or fifteen years of the battle.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can tell one another one thing they saw today, starting with J'ai vu …

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Write in the passé composé: Je fais mes devoirs.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Faire → fait.

Answer: J'ai fait mes devoirs.

Example 2. Write in the passé composé: Nous prenons le bus.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Prendre → pris.

Answer: Nous avons pris le bus.

Example 3. Translate: Did you (tu) see the film? No, I have never seen it.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Voir → vu.
2. Ne … jamais.

Answer: Tu as vu le film? Non, je ne l'ai jamais vu.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Give the participle: voir, faire, prendre.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   vu, fait, pris.

2. Easy Give the participle: avoir, être.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   eu, été.

3. Easy Translate: I read a book.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   J’ai lu un livre.

4. Medium Write in the passé composé: Elle met la table.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Elle a mis la table.

5. Medium Write in the passé composé: Ils boivent de l’eau.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ils ont bu de l’eau.

6. Medium Translate: What did you (vous) do?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Qu’est-ce que vous avez fait?

7. Hard Translate: We were not able to come, because we had to work.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Nous n’avons pas pu venir, parce que nous avons dû travailler.

8. Hard Translate: That which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ce que nous avons entendu, ce que nous avons vu de nos yeux.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Writing j’ai prendu or j’ai faisé. The participles are pris and fait.
- Writing j’ai été for I went. J’ai été means I have been; I went is je suis allé(e) (Lesson 11.3).
- Pronouncing eu like you. It sounds like the letter u: ew.

Make it a game · Participe express. Make fifteen cards with the infinitives. Flip them one at a time: the first player to shout the correct past participle and a sentence (Voir! Vu! J'ai vu un chat!) wins the card. The most cards wins.

Scripture. "That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of life;" (1 John 1:1, KJV)

In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *ce que nous avons entendu, ce que nous avons vu de nos yeux* John writes as an eyewitness of the Word of life: heard, seen, gazed upon and touched. Vu and entendu are past participles.

UNIT 11 · LE PASSÉ: LE PASSÉ COMPOSÉ · LESSON 11.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

11.3 Je Suis Venu: The Passé Composé with Être

OBJECTIVES

- Name the verbs that take être in the passé composé.
- Make the past participle agree with the subject: elle est allée, ils sont partis.
- Tell a story mixing avoir and être verbs.
- Read John 1:11 in French.

Warm-up. A small group of verbs, mostly verbs of coming and going, being born and dying, refuse avoir in the past and take être instead. Picture a house: you arrive, go in, go up the stairs, come down, go out, leave. Those are the verbs of the house of être.

WATCH

Learn French: know the passé composé with Être under 5 minutes.

Learn French With Alexa · 4:40

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=p7iiqxYB2JI

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the list. Act out each verb of motion as Alexa says it.

Note: Learn French With Alexa: the passé composé with être, in under five minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

Être or Avoir in the Passé Composé in French... French PAST TENSE explained!

Learn French With Alexa · 8:28

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=R7CMGVsanu8

Session 2 or 3: how to choose between être and avoir.

KEY TERMS

la maison d'être

The house of être: the verbs that take être.

l'accord

Agreement (m.): with être, the participle agrees with the subject.

les siens

His own (people).

le serment

Oath.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

venir
vuh-NEER
verb
to come

arriver
ah-ree-VAY
verb
to arrive

entrer
ahn-TRAY
verb
to enter

monter
mohn-TAY
verb
to go up

descendre
deh-SAHNDR
verb
to go down

tomber
tohm-BAY
verb
to fall

rester
res-TAY
verb
to stay

naître
NETR
verb
to be born

mourir
moo-REER
verb
to die

rentrer
rahn-TRAY
verb
to come home

le serment
luh sehr-MAHN
le · history
oath

recevoir
ruh-suh-VWAHR
verb
to receive

CORE IDEAS

The story. John opens his Gospel with the Word who was with God and was God, the true light that came into the world. Then comes the saddest verse in the Bible: **Elle est venue chez les siens, et les siens ne l'ont point reçue.** He came unto his own, and his own received him not. But the next verse turns to joy: to all who received him, he gave the right to become children of God. In the French, elle is la lumière, the light, so the participle agrees: elle est venue.

How French works: the house of être. These verbs take être: **aller** (allé), **venir** (venu), **arriver** (arrivé), **partir** (parti), **entrer** (entré), **sortir** (sorti), **monter** (monté),

descendre (descendu), **tomber** (tombé), **rester** (resté), **retourner** (retourné), **naître** (né, born), **mourir** (mort, died), and their compounds **revenir, devenir, rentrer**. All reflexive verbs take être too: **je me suis levé(e).**

How French works: agreement. With être, the participle agrees with the subject like an adjective: add **-e** for feminine, **-s** for plural: **il est allé, elle est allée, ils sont allés, elles sont allées. Je suis venu** (a boy), **je suis venue** (a girl). **Marie est née en 2012. Mes grands-parents sont arrivés hier.** You usually cannot hear the agreement, but you must write it.

How French works: telling a story. Mix the two: **Samedi, nous sommes partis à huit heures. Nous avons pris le train. Nous sommes arrivés à Paris à midi. Nous avons visité Notre-Dame et nous sommes montés dans les tours. Le soir, nous sommes rentrés.** Negative: **Elle n'est pas venue.** The Creed now makes sense: **il est né, il est mort, il est ressuscité, il est monté aux cieux.**

PICTURE STUDY



The Bayeux Tapestry: Harold Swears an Oath to Duke William, Unknown English embroiderers, 1070s · Wool embroidery on linen · Bayeux Tapestry Museum, Bayeux (on loan to the British Museum, London, until July 2027)

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Before 1066, Harold Godwinson, the most powerful earl in England, visited Normandy. According to the Normans, he swore an oath on holy relics to support William's claim to the English throne. When King Edward died and Harold was crowned king of England, William called him an oath-breaker, and crossed the Channel to take the crown. The tapestry shows this scene as the turning point of the whole story: Harold went back on his word, and the rest of the tapestry shows the cost.

Look closely

- Find William. How do you know he is the duke?
- Find Harold's two hands. What is he touching?
- Read the Latin caption. Which words can you guess?
- Tell the scene in French in the passé composé: Harold est venu en Normandie. Il a juré …

Talk about it

1. Why would swearing on holy relics make an oath more serious?

2. What does the Bible say about keeping our word (Matthew 5:37)?

ACTIVITY

Mon voyage (my journey)

Tell a real journey in the past, mixing être and avoir.

You will need

- Photos or drawings of a trip
- Your French notebook

Steps

1. Choose a real trip or outing your family has made.
2. Write twelve sentences in the passé composé, at least five with être verbs: Nous sommes partis ..., nous sommes arrivés ..., je suis tombé(e) ...
3. Check every être participle for agreement with the subject.
4. Tell the trip aloud with the photos or drawings.

Tips

- Write the life of a saint or a great Christian in the past: Il est né en ..., il est allé ..., il est mort en ...
- Draw the house of être and put a verb in each room.

Check your work

☐ I used five être verbs with correct agreement.

☐ I mixed être and avoir verbs correctly in one story.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the verbs of the house of être with their participles.
2. Copy the agreement rule with four examples.
3. Copy John 1:11 in French and English.

> **From history.** William the Conqueror was crowned king of England in Westminster Abbey on Christmas Day 1066. For three hundred years afterward, the kings and nobles of England spoke French, and about a third of English words today come from French.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can tell the story of the day each evening, mixing être and avoir: Je suis allé(e) … j'ai vu …

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Write in the passé composé: Elle va à l'église.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Aller takes être.
2. Elle → allée.

Answer: Elle est allée à l'église.

Example 2. Write in the passé composé: Nous (boys and girls) arrivons.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Arriver takes être.
2. Mixed group: masculine plural.

Answer: Nous sommes arrivés.

Example 3. Translate: My grandfather was born in 1950 and died in 2020.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Naître → né, mourir → mort, with être.

Answer: Mon grand-père est né en 1950 et il est mort en 2020.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Does aller take avoir or être?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   être.

2. Easy Give the participle: venir, naître, mourir.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   venu, né, mort.

3. Easy Translate: He left.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Il est parti.

4. Medium Write in the passé composé: Elles sortent.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Elles sont sorties.

5. Medium Make negative: Tu es tombé.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Tu n’es pas tombé.

6. Medium Avoir or être? Nous ___ mangé. Nous ___ restés.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   avons; sommes.

7. Hard Translate: Yesterday my sister went to Paris; she took the train and arrived at noon.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Hier, ma sœur est allée à Paris; elle a pris le train et elle est arrivée à midi.

8. Hard Translate: He came unto his own, and his own received him not.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Elle est venue chez les siens, et les siens ne l’ont point reçue. (In the Louis Segond, elle is the light.)

COMMON MISTAKES

- Using avoir with motion verbs: j'ai allé. Aller takes être: je suis allé(e).
- Forgetting agreement: elle est allé. Write elle est allée.
- Making avoir participles agree with the subject: elles ont mangées. With avoir, no agreement with the subject: elles ont mangé.

> **Make it a game · La maison d'être.** Draw a house with stairs, a door, a window and a garden. Move a token around it; at each spot, the player must say a sentence in the passé composé with the matching être verb: Je suis entré(e)! Je suis monté(e)! Je suis tombé(e)! A correct sentence earns a point.

> **Scripture.** "He came unto his own, and his own received him not." (John 1:11, KJV)
>
> In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *Elle est venue chez les siens, et les siens ne l'ont point reçue.* The light came into the world, but his own people did not receive him. Est venue is the passé composé of venir, agreeing with elle, the light.

UNIT 12

Le Monde Francophone

Lesson 12.1 surveys the francophone world, from France, Belgium and Switzerland to Quebec, Haiti, Senegal, the Congo and Madagascar, with the names of countries, the prepositions en, au and aux, and Acts 2:8 in French. Lesson 12.2 tells the story of New France and Quebec, studies Champlain's 1613 engraving of the Habitation de Québec with its old-French legend, teaches the comparative, and reads Psalm 96:3.

Lesson 12.3 tells how Latin became French, how French changed over the centuries and why it sounds different from region to region, reviews the grammar of the year, and reads Revelation 7:9. The unit challenge is a five-minute presentation on a French-speaking country or region. The final exam comes at the end of week 36.

PREREQUISITES

- Units 1–11.

MASTERY CHECKLIST

- ☐ I can name fifteen French-speaking countries and regions and find them on a map.
- ☐ I can use en, au, aux and à with places.
- ☐ I can tell the story of New France and Quebec in simple French.
- ☐ I can compare with plus … que, moins … que, aussi … que, and meilleur.
- ☐ I can present a French-speaking country in five minutes.

OPTIONAL BOOKS AND RESOURCES FOR THIS UNIT

- **A Louis Segond 1910 Bible (print, or free online)**: Bible Gateway lists it as Louis Segond (LSG). Used all year.
- **Index cards and a box**: For the flashcard deck that grows every lesson.
- **A world map or atlas**: For the francophone world (Lesson 12.1 and the unit challenge).

Not required. Every activity in this unit works with paper, pencil, scissors and the free links below. School Launch is independent and free.

LESSONS IN THIS UNIT

12.1	**La Francophonie: Countries and Prepositions**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
12.2	**Le Québec: New France and the Comparative**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes
12.3	**L'Histoire du Français: Review of the Year**	4 sessions of 40–50 minutes

Unit 12 test

Unit 12 test. Questions 1–2 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written. 50 points.

1. **5 pts**
   Oral: Name five French-speaking countries on a map and say in French where each is: Le Sénégal est en Afrique.

2. **5 pts**
   Oral: Quel pays francophone veux-tu visiter? Pourquoi? (three sentences)

3. **5 pts**
   Write en, au or aux: ___ France, ___ Canada, ___ États-Unis, ___ Belgique, ___ Sénégal.

4. **5 pts**
   Give the nationality (m. and f.): France, Canada, Belgium, Switzerland, Senegal.

5. **5 pts**
   Who founded Quebec, and in what year?

6. **5 pts**
   Translate: Quebec is bigger than France. Paris is older than Montreal.

7. **5 pts**
   Translate: This bread is better than that bread. She sings as well as her sister.

8. **5 pts**
   From which language does French come, and name one way French has changed since 1600.

9. **5 pts**
   Read Champlain’s legend: what were the magazin, the colombier and the jardin du sieur de Champlain?

10. **5 pts**

Copy Revelation 7:9 from de toute nation to langue, and translate.

ANSWER KEY

1. La France est en Europe. La Belgique est en Europe. Le Canada (le Québec) est en Amérique du Nord. Le Sénégal est en Afrique. Haïti est dans les Caraïbes. (or similar)
2. Je veux visiter le Québec parce que j'aime la neige. Je veux voir la ville de Québec. Je vais manger de la poutine. (or similar)
3. en, au, aux, en, au.
4. français / française; canadien / canadienne; belge / belge; suisse / suisse; sénégalais / sénégalaise.
5. Samuel de Champlain, in 1608.
6. Le Québec est plus grand que la France. Paris est plus vieux (plus ancien) que Montréal.
7. Ce pain est meilleur que ce pain-là. Elle chante aussi bien que sa sœur.
8. From Latin (the Latin spoken in Roman Gaul). Spelling has changed: u and v, i and j were not distinguished (ouuriers, Iardin), and many words like Abitation gained or lost letters (or similar).
9. The storehouse, the dovecote and Champlain's garden.
10. de toute nation, de toute tribu, de tout peuple, et de toute langue. Of all nations, and kindreds, and people, and tongues.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

UNIT CHALLENGE: EXPOSÉ: UN PAYS FRANCOPHONE

Prepare and give a five-minute presentation in French on one French-speaking country or region (Quebec, Belgium, Switzerland, Haiti, Senegal, Côte d'Ivoire, the Democratic Republic of the Congo, Madagascar, Louisiana, or another). Include: where it is (with a map), its capital and languages, a little of its history in the passé composé, how the Gospel came there, its food and its weather, a comparison with your own country (plus … que), and why you would like to visit (Je voudrais …).

LOOK FOR	WHAT IT MEANS
Content	Covers geography, history, faith, food and weather accurately.
Grammar	Uses the present, the near future and the passé composé correctly.
Comparisons and places	Uses en, au, aux and the comparative correctly.
Presentation	Speaks clearly for five minutes, with a map and pictures.

UNIT 12 · LE MONDE FRANCOPHONE · LESSON 12.1 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

12.1 La Francophonie: Countries and Prepositions

OBJECTIVES

- Name fifteen French-speaking countries and regions and find them on a map.
- Use en, au, aux and à with countries and cities.
- Give nationalities and languages.
- Read Acts 2:8 in French.

> **Warm-up.** French is spoken by about 320 million people on five continents, and it is an official language in nearly thirty countries. More French speakers now live in Africa than in France. Where in the world could you use your French? Today you find out.

WATCH

Ask a French Teacher #12 - What is LE MONDE FRANCOPHONE?

Learn French with FrenchPod101.com · 3:00

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=-WMLYlHsXYI

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the map. Point to each region on your map as the teacher names it.

Note: FrenchPod101: Ask a French Teacher, what is le monde francophone?, three minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

European Countries in French

Learn French With Alexa · 7:15

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Exsc1Gw55m0

Session 2 or 3: the countries of Europe in French, with their articles.

KEY TERMS

la francophonie
The French-speaking world.

francophone
French-speaking.

le pays
Country (the same in singular and plural).

la langue maternelle
Mother tongue.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

la francophonie
lah frahn-koh-foh-NEE
la · world
the French-speaking world

francophone
frahn-koh-FUN
adjective
French-speaking

le pays
luh pay-EE
le · world
country

la Belgique
lah bel-ZHEEK
la · world
Belgium

la Suisse
lah SWEES
la · world
Switzerland

le Sénégal
luh say-nay-GAHL
le · world
Senegal

les États-Unis
lay-zay-tah-zew-NEE
les · world
the United States

belge
BELZH
adjective
Belgian

suisse
SWEES
adjective
Swiss

la langue
lah LAHNG
la · world
language; tongue

la capitale
lah kah-pee-TAHL
la · world
capital city

le monde
luh MOHND
le · world
world

CORE IDEAS

The story. Fifty days after the resurrection, the disciples were gathered in Jerusalem when a sound like a rushing mighty wind filled the house, and tongues like fire rested on each of them. They began to speak in other languages, and Jews from every nation under heaven, in Jerusalem for the feast, were amazed: **Et comment les entendons-nous dans notre propre langue à chacun, dans notre langue maternelle?** At Pentecost, the curse of Babel began to be undone: the Gospel speaks every language, including French.

How French works: the francophone world. Europe: la France, la Belgique, la Suisse, le Luxembourg, Monaco. North America: le Canada (le Québec, le Nouveau-Brunswick), la Louisiane (in the United States). **The Caribbean: Haïti, la Martinique, la Guadeloupe. Africa: le Sénégal, la Côte d'Ivoire, le Mali, le Cameroun, la République démocratique du Congo, le Maroc, l'Algérie, la Tunisie, Madagascar. The Pacific: la Polynésie française, la Nouvelle-Calédonie.**

How French works: countries and prepositions. Countries have genders: most ending in -e are feminine (la France, la Belgique), the rest masculine (le Canada, le Sénégal, le Japon); a few are plural (les États-Unis). To say in or to: **en** + feminine country (**en France, en Belgique**) or any country beginning with a vowel (**en Iran**); **au** + masculine (**au Canada, au Sénégal**); **aux** + plural (**aux États-Unis**); **à** + city (**à Paris, à Dakar, à Montréal**). From: **de France, du Canada, des États-Unis.**

How French works: nationalities and languages. français(e), belge, suisse, canadien(ne), québécois(e), haïtien(ne), sénégalais(e), ivoirien(ne), marocain(e), américain(e), anglais(e), allemand(e), espagnol(e), italien(ne). As adjectives they take no capital: **Il est canadien.** As nouns they do: **un Canadien.** Languages are masculine and lower-case: **le français, l'anglais, l'arabe, le wolof** (Senegal), **le créole** (Haiti). **En Suisse, on parle français, allemand, italien et romanche.**

ACTIVITY

La carte de la francophonie (the map of the French-speaking world)

Make a map of the French-speaking world and present it.

You will need

- A blank world map (printed or drawn)
- Colored pencils

Steps

1. Color every country where French is an official language, and label fifteen of them in French with their capitals.
2. Draw a small flag beside five of them.
3. Write a sentence for each of the fifteen: Au Sénégal, on parle français et wolof. La capitale est Dakar.
4. Present the map aloud, traveling from country to country: D'abord, je vais en France. Ensuite, je vais au Maroc …

Tips

- Find one church or Christian mission in three of the countries and write a sentence about it.
- Find the time it is now in Paris, Montréal, Dakar and Tahiti.

Check your work

☐ I labeled fifteen countries with their capitals.

☐ I used en, au, aux and à correctly.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the francophone countries by continent.
2. Copy the rules for en, au, aux, à with examples.
3. Copy ten nationalities in masculine and feminine.
4. Copy Acts 2:8 in French and English.

From history. The Organisation internationale de la Francophonie, which links the French-speaking nations, grew from an idea of Léopold Sédar Senghor, the poet who became the first president of Senegal, and other leaders of newly independent countries in the 1960s.

At home in French. French-speaking families can follow a francophone country's news or weather for a week and report it in French at dinner.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Write en, au or aux: ___ Suisse, ___ Mali, ___ États-Unis.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Suisse is feminine.
2. Mali is masculine.
3. États-Unis is plural.

Answer: en Suisse, au Mali, aux États-Unis.

Example 2. Translate: She is Belgian and she lives in Brussels.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Belge, no capital.
2. À + city.

Answer: Elle est belge et elle habite à Bruxelles.

Example 3. Translate: In Haiti, they speak French and Creole.

▼ **Show solution**

1. On parle.
2. En Haïti.

Answer: En Haïti, on parle français et créole.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Name three French-speaking countries in Europe.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   la France, la Belgique, la Suisse (le Luxembourg, Monaco).

2. Easy Translate: in France; in Canada.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   en France; au Canada.

3. Easy What is the capital of Senegal?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Dakar.

4. Medium Give the feminine: canadien, sénégalais, suisse.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   canadienne, sénégalaise, suisse.

5. Medium Translate: I am going to Morocco and then to Tunisia.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Je vais au Maroc et ensuite en Tunisie.

6. Medium Translate: He comes from the United States.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Il vient des États-Unis.

7. Hard Translate: More French speakers live in Africa than in France.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Plus de francophones habitent en Afrique qu'en France.

8. Hard Translate: And how hear we every man in our own tongue, wherein we were born?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Et comment les entendons-nous dans notre propre langue à chacun, dans notre langue maternelle?

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying à France. Countries take en, au or aux: en France.
- Capitalizing nationality adjectives: Il est Français. Write il est français.
- Saying en Canada. Masculine countries take au: au Canada.

> **Make it a game · Le tour du monde.** Spin a globe (or point at a map with eyes closed). Wherever your finger lands, say a sentence with the right preposition: Je vais au Brésil! Je vais en Chine! Je vais aux Philippines! If the country is francophone, add a second sentence: On parle français au Cameroun! A mistake ends your journey.

> **Scripture.** "And how hear we every man in our own tongue, wherein we were born?" (Acts 2:8, KJV)
>
> In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *Et comment les entendons-nous dans notre propre langue à chacun, dans notre langue maternelle?* At Pentecost, pilgrims from many nations hear the apostles speak of God's wonderful works in their own languages.

UNIT 12 · LE MONDE FRANCOPHONE · LESSON 12.2 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

12.2 Le Québec: New France and the Comparative

OBJECTIVES

- Tell the story of New France and Quebec in simple French.
- Notice some words and sounds of Quebec French.
- Compare with plus … que, moins … que, aussi … que, meilleur and mieux.
- Read Psalm 96:3 in French.

> **Warm-up.** On a cliff above the Saint Lawrence River stands a walled city where the street signs, the churches and the people all speak French, in North America. It is Quebec City, and it was founded more than four hundred years ago. Today you visit it.

WATCH

Le français du Québec - 5 minutes de français

Français avec Pierre · 5:12

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ZkJjnh_56l0

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the story. A French speaker from France explains the French of Quebec. Turn on French subtitles and listen for the words in the list.

Note: Français avec Pierre: Quebec French, about five minutes, in French.

KEY TERMS

la Nouvelle-France
New France: the French colonies in North America, 1534–1763.

l'Habitation
Champlain's fortified house and storehouse at Quebec (f.).

le comparatif
The comparative: plus … que, moins … que, aussi … que.

les merveilles
Wonders, marvelous works.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

la Nouvelle-France
lah noo-vel FRAHNS
la · history
New France

le fleuve
luh FLUHV
le · world
great river

plus … que
PLEW … kuh
comparative
more … than

moins … que
MWAN … kuh
comparative
less … than

aussi … que
oh-SEE … kuh
comparative
as … as

meilleur(e)
meh-YUHR
adjective
better

mieux
MYUH
adverb
better

le colombier
luh koh-lohm-BYAY
le · history
dovecote

le souper
luh soo-PAY
le · Quebec
dinner (Quebec)

magasiner
mah-gah-zee-NAY
verb
to shop (Quebec)

se souvenir
suh soov-NEER
verb
to remember

les merveilles
lay mehr-VEY
les · faith
wonders

CORE IDEAS

The story. In July 1608, Samuel de Champlain landed at a narrow point of the Saint Lawrence and built a fortified house, the Habitation: the beginning of Quebec. The first winter was terrible, and most of his men died of scurvy, but the colony survived. In 1639 the Ursuline nun Marie de l'Incarnation arrived and opened the first school for girls in North America; she learned the native languages and wrote dictionaries and catechisms in them. The missionaries of New France sang the psalm: **Racontez parmi les nations sa gloire, Parmi tous les peuples ses merveilles!**

How French works: the comparative. plus + adjective + **que** (more … than), **moins … que** (less … than), **aussi … que** (as … as). The adjective agrees as usual: **Le Québec est plus grand que la France. Montréal est moins vieille que Québec. Ma sœur est aussi grande que moi.** With nouns: **plus de, moins de, autant de: Il y a plus de neige à Québec qu'à Paris.**

How French works: better. Bon becomes **meilleur** (better, an adjective: **Ce pain est meilleur que l'autre. Cette tarte est meilleure.**) and **bien** becomes **mieux** (better, an adverb: **Il chante mieux que moi.**). Never say plus bon. The best: **le meilleur, la meilleure: C'est la meilleure poutine de Québec!**

How French works: the French of Quebec. About seven million people in Quebec speak French as their mother tongue. Their French keeps some old words and sounds from the 1600s and has some of its own: **le dîner** (lunch) and **le souper** (dinner), **le char** (car, for la voiture), **magasiner** (to shop), **le courriel** (e-mail), **bienvenue** (you're welcome, for de rien), **la fin de semaine** (the weekend). Quebec's motto, on every license plate, is **Je me souviens:** I remember.

PICTURE STUDY



Abitation de Quebecq (the Habitation at Quebec), Samuel de Champlain, 1613 · Engraving, from Champlain's Les Voyages (Paris, 1613), page 187 · Bibliothèque et Archives nationales du Québec (this copy)

Image: Wikimedia Commons, public domain

Champlain drew this picture of the Habitation he built in 1608 and printed it in the book of his voyages in 1613. The legend below is in the French of his day, and you can read most of it: A Le magazin (the storehouse), B Colombier (the dovecote), E Cadran (the sundial), H Logis du sieur de Champlain (Champlain's lodging), I La porte de l'habitation, où il y a Pont-levis (the gate, with a drawbridge), O Iardin du sieur de Champlain (his garden), P La cuisine, R La grande rivière de Sainct Lorens. Printers then used u for v and i for j: ouuriers is ouvriers, Iardin is jardin.

Look closely

- Find the letters H and O. Where did Champlain live, and where was his garden?
- Find the cannon, the moat and the drawbridge. Why did the Habitation need them?
- Read the legend for B, E and P in French. What modern spellings do you know?
- Find the river R. Which river is it?

Talk about it

1. Why would Champlain build a garden in the first year?
2. What would you need to survive your first winter in New France?

ACTIVITY

Visite de Québec (a tour of Quebec)

Plan a virtual tour of Quebec City and compare it with your town.

You will need

- A map of Quebec City (printed or online)
- Your French notebook

Steps

1. Find six places on a map of Quebec City: le Château Frontenac, la Citadelle, la basilique-cathédrale Notre-Dame de Québec, la Place Royale, les plaines d'Abraham, le fleuve Saint-Laurent.
2. Write a sentence about each: La Place Royale est le lieu où Champlain a construit l'Habitation.
3. Write six comparisons between Quebec and your town: Québec est plus vieille que ma ville. Il fait plus froid à Québec.
4. Present the tour aloud, as a guide.

Tips

- Make a dictionary of ten Quebec words and their France equivalents.
- Read about Marie de l'Incarnation or Saint François de Laval and write five sentences.

Check your work

☐ I wrote six sentences about Quebec.

☐ I used plus, moins, aussi and meilleur correctly.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the story of Champlain and Quebec in five French sentences.

2. Copy the comparative rules with examples, and meilleur / mieux.
3. Copy five Quebec words.
4. Copy Psalm 96:3 in French and English.

> **From history.** In 1759 the British general James Wolfe defeated the French general Montcalm on the Plains of Abraham outside Quebec; both men died of their wounds. In 1763 New France was handed to Britain, but the French language, the Catholic faith and the French civil law of Quebec survived.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can listen to a Quebec radio station or church service online together for ten minutes.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Translate: Canada is bigger than the United States.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Plus grand que.

Answer: Le Canada est plus grand que les États-Unis.

Example 2. Translate: This cake is better than that cake.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Bon → meilleur.

Answer: Ce gâteau est meilleur que ce gâteau-là.

Example 3. Translate: My brother speaks French better than me.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Bien → mieux.
2. Que moi.

Answer: Mon frère parle français mieux que moi.

PRACTICE

1. Easy Who founded Quebec in 1608?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Samuel de Champlain.

2. Easy What is Quebec's motto, and what does it mean?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Je me souviens: I remember.

3. Easy Translate: more … than; less … than.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   plus … que; moins … que.

4. Medium Translate: My sister is as tall as my mother.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ma sœur est aussi grande que ma mère.

5. Medium Bon or bien? meilleur or mieux? Cette soupe est ___ que l'autre.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   meilleure.

6. Medium What do Quebecers mean by le souper?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Dinner, the evening meal.

7. Hard Translate: There is more snow in Quebec than in Paris, and it is colder.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Il y a plus de neige à Québec qu'à Paris, et il fait plus froid.

8. Hard Translate: Declare his glory among the heathen, his wonders among all people.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Racontez parmi les nations sa gloire, parmi tous les peuples ses merveilles!

COMMON MISTAKES

- Saying plus bon. Say meilleur: c'est meilleur.

- Confusing meilleur and mieux. Meilleur describes a noun (un meilleur livre); mieux describes a verb (il lit mieux).
- Forgetting que: plus grand la France. Say plus grand que la France.

> **Make it a game · Plus ou moins?.** The parent names two things (un éléphant et une souris; Paris et Québec; l'été et l'hiver). The student must make a true comparison in French: Un éléphant est plus grand qu'une souris. Use plus, moins, aussi and meilleur at least once each to win.

> **Scripture.** "Declare his glory among the heathen, his wonders among all people." (Psalm 96:3, KJV)
>
> In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *Racontez parmi les nations sa gloire, Parmi tous les peuples ses merveilles!* The psalmist calls God's people to tell his glory among the nations and his wonders among all peoples.

UNIT 12 · LE MONDE FRANCOPHONE · LESSON 12.3 OF 36 · 4 SESSIONS OF 40–50 MINUTES

12.3 L'Histoire du Français: Review of the Year

OBJECTIVES

- Tell how French grew from Latin and changed over the centuries.
- Notice why French sounds different from region to region.
- Review the three time frames of the year: present, near future and passé composé.
- Read Revelation 7:9 in French.

> **Warm-up.** Thirty-five weeks ago you said bonjour for the first time. Today you look back on the whole year, and on the long road French itself has traveled, from the soldiers of Rome to the Louis Segond Bible on your desk.

WATCH

How FRENCH has changed over time! This is what French words used to mean...

Learn French With Alexa · 6:21

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=KkhmsDE-xfI

> **WHEN TO WATCH**
> Session 1, after the story of the language. Note three words whose meaning has changed.

Note: Learn French With Alexa: how French has changed over time, about six minutes.

BACKUP VIDEO

D'où viennent les accents régionaux ? - 5 minutes de français

Français avec Pierre · 4:00

https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=NaqtTlcahHU

Session 2 or 3: a native speaker on where regional accents come from. Turn on French subtitles.

KEY TERMS

le latin
Latin: the mother of French.

l'ancien français
Old French (m.), spoken from about 800 to 1300.

l'accent
Accent: the way a region pronounces (m.).

la foule
The crowd, the multitude.

VOCABULARY FOR THE WEEK

Standard French sounds: most last letters are quiet (but c, r, f and l usually speak), on, an and in are hummed through the nose, and the capitals show where to lean: the last sounded syllable.

le latin
luh lah-TAN
le · language
Latin

l'ancien français
lahn-syan frahn-SEH
le · language
Old French

l'accent
lak-SAHN
le · language
accent

la foule
lah FOOL
la · faith
crowd, multitude

le trône
luh TROHN
le · faith
throne

la tribu
lah tree-BEW
la · faith
tribe

la palme
lah PAHLM
la · faith
palm branch

fonder
fohn-DAY
verb
to found

traduire
trah-DWEER
verb
to translate

le siècle
luh SYEKL
le · history
century

compter
kohn-TAY
verb
to count

au revoir
oh ruh-VWAHR
phrase
goodbye

CORE IDEAS

The story. The apostle John, exiled on the island of Patmos, was shown the end of the story: **Après cela, je regardai, et voici, il y avait une grande foule, que personne ne pouvait compter, de toute nation, de toute tribu, de tout peuple, et de toute langue. Ils se tenaient devant le trône et devant l'agneau, revêtus de robes blanches,**

et des palmes dans leurs mains. Every language you will ever learn will be spoken there, in praise of the Lamb. Learning another tongue is a small foretaste of that day.

How French works: from Latin to French. When Rome conquered Gaul, the people learned the everyday Latin of soldiers and merchants, and over centuries it became French: Latin **caballus** became **cheval**, **aqua** became **eau**, **dominica** (the Lord's day) became **dimanche**. The oldest text in French is the Oaths of Strasbourg, sworn in 842 by two grandsons of Charlemagne. In 1539 King Francis I ordered that French, not Latin, be used in the law courts, and in 1635 Cardinal Richelieu founded the Académie française to watch over the language.

How French works: French and the Bible. In 1535 Pierre Robert Olivétan, a cousin of John Calvin, published the first French Bible translated from the Hebrew and Greek. Many revisions followed, and in 1880 the Swiss pastor Louis Segond finished his translation of the whole Bible; revised in 1910, it is the Bible you have read all year, still loved by French-speaking Protestants around the world. You have seen its old forms: **il se leva, il pria** (the literary past), **Il n'est point ici** (point for pas).

How French works: the year in three tenses. Present: what is happening or always true: **Je parle, je finis, j'attends; je suis, j'ai, je vais, je fais. Near future**: aller + infinitive: **Je vais parler. Nous allons partir. Passé composé**: avoir or être + past participle: **J'ai parlé. J'ai fait. Je suis allé(e).** One verb in all three: **Aujourd'hui, je lis la Bible. Hier, j'ai lu la Bible. Demain, je vais lire la Bible.**

ACTIVITY

Ma ligne du temps (my timeline)

Make a timeline of the French language and a review of your year.

You will need

- A long strip of paper
- Markers

Steps

1. Draw a timeline of the French language with at least eight dates: the Roman conquest of Gaul (about 50 B.C.), the Oaths of Strasbourg (842), Joan of Arc (1429), Olivétan's Bible (1535), the edict of Villers-Cotterêts (1539), the Académie française (1635), Champlain at Quebec (1608), the Louis Segond Bible (1880, 1910).
2. Write one French sentence in the passé composé for each date: En 1608, Champlain a fondé Québec.
3. On the back, write ten sentences about your year in French: what you learned (passé composé), what you can do now (present), and what you are going to do next year (near future).
4. Read the review aloud to your family.

Tips

- Record a short video saying goodbye to the year in French, using all three tenses.
- Write a thank-you letter in French to someone who helped you learn this year.

Check your work

☐ I wrote eight sentences in the passé composé.

☐ I used all three tenses correctly in my review.

FRENCH NOTEBOOK

1. Copy the timeline of the French language.

2. Copy the three tenses with one verb in each.
3. Copy Revelation 7:9 in French and English.

> **From history.** French was the language of diplomacy in Europe for more than two centuries; treaties from the 1700s to the early 1900s were written in French, and French is still one of the two working languages of the United Nations Secretariat and of the International Olympic Committee.

> **At home in French.** French-speaking families can keep one French habit all summer: grace at meals, the Creed on Sunday, or a psalm a week from the Louis Segond.

WORKED EXAMPLES

Example 1. Write in all three tenses: nous / manger.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Present, near future, passé composé.

Answer: Nous mangeons. Nous allons manger. Nous avons mangé.

Example 2. Write in all three tenses: elle / partir.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Partir takes être in the past.

Answer: Elle part. Elle va partir. Elle est partie.

Example 3. Translate: In 1635, Richelieu founded the Académie française.

▼ **Show solution**

1. Fonder → fondé, with avoir.

Answer: En 1635, Richelieu a fondé l'Académie française.

PRACTICE

1. Easy From which language does French come?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   From Latin.

2. Easy What is the oldest text in French, and when was it written?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   The Oaths of Strasbourg, in 842.

3. Easy Who translated the Bible you have read all year?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Louis Segond (1880, revised 1910).

4. Medium Write in all three tenses: je / faire mes devoirs.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Je fais mes devoirs. Je vais faire mes devoirs. J'ai fait mes devoirs.

5. Medium Write in all three tenses: ils / venir.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Ils viennent. Ils vont venir. Ils sont venus.

6. Medium What does point mean in Il n'est point ici?

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Not (an older, stronger form of pas).

7. Hard Translate: This year I learned French; next year I am going to learn more.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   Cette année, j'ai appris le français; l'année prochaine, je vais apprendre plus.

8. Hard Translate: a great multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and kindreds, and people, and tongues.

   ▼ **Show answer**

   une grande foule, que personne ne pouvait compter, de toute nation, de toute tribu, de tout peuple, et de toute langue.

COMMON MISTAKES

- Mixing up the auxiliaries in review: j'ai allé. Motion verbs take être: je suis allé(e).
- Using the near future for the past: je vais manger hier. Hier needs the passé composé: j'ai mangé hier.
- Thinking the Louis Segond's il se leva is a mistake. It is the literary past (passé simple), correct in books.

> **Make it a game · Les trois temps (the three times).** The parent says a verb and a subject (tu / prendre). The student must say it in the present, the near future and the passé composé in under ten seconds: Tu prends. Tu vas prendre. Tu as pris. Ten verbs without a mistake wins the year's championship.

> **Scripture.** "After this I beheld, and, lo, a great multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and kindreds, and people, and tongues, stood before the throne, and before the Lamb, clothed with white robes, and palms in their hands;" (Revelation 7:9, KJV)
>
> In the Louis Segond Bible (1910): *de toute nation, de toute tribu, de tout peuple, et de toute langue* John sees a multitude from every nation and language standing before the throne and the Lamb. The year ends where Pentecost pointed: every tongue praising God.

COURSE EXAM

Midterm Exam

Covers Units 1–6. Time: 60–75 minutes.

Questions 1–3 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written, without notes. 100 points. Grade with the separate answer key; give partial credit for answers that are understandable and nearly correct, and full credit for spelling only when accents are right.

---

1. **5 pts** **Lesson 2.1**

   Oral: Greet the parent formally for the afternoon, introduce yourself (name, age, where you live), and take leave.

2. **5 pts** **Lesson 3.1**

   Oral: Describe your family in four sentences (how many, names, ages, what they are like).

3. **5 pts** **Lesson 1.2**

   Oral: Read aloud: Je suis dans la joie quand on me dit: Allons à la maison de l'Éternel!

4. **5 pts** **Lesson 1.1**

   Tu or vous? (a) your cousin, (b) a police officer, (c) your dog, (d) your best friend's grandmother, (e) a new classmate your age.

5. **5 pts** **Lesson 1.3**

   Write in words: 14, 21, 30, 17, 0.

6. **5 pts** **Lesson 2.2**

   Conjugate être and avoir for je, nous and ils.

7. **5 pts** **Lesson 6.2**

   Conjugate aller and prendre for tu, vous and elles.

8. **5 pts** **Lesson 4.2**

   Conjugate in the present for nous: parler, manger, étudier, boire, aimer.

9. **5 pts** **Lesson 2.3**

   Make the adjective agree: une fille (grand); des garçons (français); une maison (blanc); des sœurs (gentil); une amie (heureux).

10. **5 pts** **Lesson 3.3**

    Write the possessive: (my) ___ grands-parents; (our) ___ maison; (your, tu) ___ école; (his) ___ sœur; (their) ___ enfants.

11. **5 pts** **Lesson 4.3**

    Write the time: 1:30, 4:15, 8:45 (with moins le quart), 12:00 noon, 10:05.

12. **5 pts** **Lesson 4.3**

Write the date in French: Sunday, March 1; Friday, December 25.

13. **5 pts** **Lesson 5.2**

Le, du or de? J'aime ___ chocolat. Je mange ___ pain. Je ne bois pas ___ café. Il y a beaucoup ___ eau. Elle prend ___ soupe (some).

14. **5 pts** **Lesson 3.2**

Translate with avoir: I am hungry. She is fifteen. We are right. They are cold. You (tu) are afraid.

15. **5 pts** **Lesson 6.2**

Complete with au, à la, à l' or aux and the right form of aller: Je ___ ___ parc. Nous ___ ___ église. Ils ___ ___ États-Unis.

16. **5 pts** **Lesson 6.3**

Translate: Tomorrow we are going to visit my grandparents.

17. **5 pts** **Lesson 5.3**

Translate: I would like the chicken and a glass of water, please.

18. **5 pts** **Lesson 6.1**

Translate: The bakery is next to the church, across from the station.

19. **5 pts** **Lesson 4.2**

Write a paragraph of five French sentences about your school day, using at least three different verbs and one time.

20. **5 pts** **Lesson 2.2**

Scripture: Give the meaning of Je suis celui qui suis (Exodus 3:14) and of Celui qui a le Fils a la vie (1 John 5:12).

ANSWER KEY

1. Bonjour, monsieur / madame. Je m'appelle ___. J'ai ___ ans. J'habite à ___. Au revoir, monsieur / madame. Bonne journée!
2. Dans ma famille, il y a ___ personnes. Mon père s'appelle ___. Il a ___ ans. Il est ___. (or similar)
3. Graded on silent final letters (suis, dans, dit), the nasal vowels (dans, quand, on), the liaison in Allons à, and the r of Éternel.
4. (a) tu, (b) vous, (c) tu, (d) vous, (e) tu.
5. quatorze, vingt et un, trente, dix-sept, zéro.
6. je suis, nous sommes, ils sont; j'ai, nous avons, ils ont.
7. tu vas, vous allez, elles vont; tu prends, vous prenez, elles prennent.
8. nous parlons, nous mangeons, nous étudions, nous buvons, nous aimons.
9. grande; français; blanche; gentilles; heureuse.
10. mes; notre; ton; sa; leurs.
11. Il est une heure et demie. Il est quatre heures et quart. Il est neuf heures moins le quart. Il est midi. Il est dix heures cinq.
12. dimanche, le premier mars; vendredi, le vingt-cinq décembre.
13. le; du; de; d'; de la.
14. J'ai faim. Elle a quinze ans. Nous avons raison. Ils ont froid. Tu as peur.
15. vais au; allons à l'; vont aux.
16. Demain, nous allons visiter mes grands-parents.
17. Je voudrais le poulet et un verre d'eau, s'il vous plaît.
18. La boulangerie est à côté de l'église, en face de la gare.
19. Graded on correct present-tense verbs, a time expression, articles and agreement.
20. I AM THAT I AM, God's name: he is the eternal, self-existent God. He that hath the Son hath life: to have Christ is to have eternal life.

Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)

COURSE EXAM

Final Exam

Covers Cumulative, with emphasis on Units 7–12. Time: 75–90 minutes.

Questions 1–3 are oral: the parent asks and marks. The rest are written, without notes. 100 points. Grade with the separate answer key; give partial credit for answers that are understandable and nearly correct, and full credit for spelling only when accents and agreement are right.

---

1. **5 pts** **Lesson 11.1**
   Oral: Qu'est-ce que tu as fait le week-end dernier? Answer in four sentences.

2. **5 pts** **Lesson 9.1**
   Oral: Describe your daily routine from waking to bedtime in five sentences with times.

3. **5 pts** **Lesson 8.1**
   Oral: Quel temps fait-il aujourd'hui? Qu'est-ce que tu portes? Qu'est-ce que tu vas faire demain?

4. **5 pts** **Lesson 7.1**
   Translate with avoir mal à: My head hurts. Her feet hurt. I have a stomachache. His back hurts. My ears hurt.

5. **5 pts** **Lesson 7.2**
   Make the color agree: une robe (vert); des chaussures (noir); une chemise (blanc); des pulls (gris); des bottes (marron).

6. **5 pts** **Lesson 7.3**
   Write ce, cet, cette or ces, and place the adjective: (this, beau) ___ manteau; (this) ___ homme; (these, nouveau) ___ chaussures; (this, vieux) ___ église; (this) ___ arbre.

7. **5 pts** **Lesson 8.1**
   Translate: It is nice out. It is raining. It is snowing. It is cold. It is twenty degrees.

8. **5 pts** **Lesson 8.3**

   Conjugate faire in the present tense (all six forms).

9. **5 pts** **Lesson 8.3**

   Faire du / de la, jouer au / du: Je ___ vélo. Elle ___ piano. Nous ___ foot. Ils ___ natation. Tu ___ guitare?

10. **5 pts** **Lesson 9.1**

    Conjugate se lever in the present tense (je, tu, il, nous, ils).

11. **5 pts** **Lesson 9.3**

    Translate: I want to go out, but I must do the dishes, so I cannot come.

12. **5 pts** **Lesson 10.1**

    Conjugate finir and attendre for je, nous and ils.

13. **5 pts** **Lesson 10.3**

    Conjugate croire and voir for nous and ils.

14. **5 pts** **Lesson 11.2**

    Passé composé with avoir: je (parler); nous (finir); ils (attendre); elle (faire); tu (voir).

15. **5 pts** **Lesson 11.3**

    Passé composé with être: elle (aller); nous (arriver, boys); ils (partir); je (venir, a girl); Marie (naître).

16. **5 pts** **Lesson 11.3**

    Translate: Last year we went to Quebec; we saw the old city and we ate a lot.

17. **5 pts** **Lesson 12.3**

    Comparisons: Translate: Wisdom is better than gold. My brother is taller than me. Belgium is less big than France.

18. **5 pts** **Lesson 12.1**

    Write en, au or aux, and the capital: ___ Sénégal (capital?); ___ France; ___ États-Unis; ___ Canada (capital?).

19. **5 pts** **Lesson 12.2**

Culture: Name three feasts of the Christian year in French and one French custom for one of them; who founded Quebec and when?

20. **5 pts** **Lesson 10.2**

Scripture: Translate and explain one: (a) Je suis la résurrection et la vie (John 11:25); (b) Il n’est point ici; il est ressuscité (Matthew 28:6); (c) J’ai combattu le bon combat (2 Timothy 4:7).

ANSWER KEY

1. Passé composé sentences such as: Je suis allé(e) à l'église. J'ai mangé avec ma famille. J'ai lu un livre. J'ai joué au foot.
2. Je me réveille à … Je me lève. Je m'habille. Je prends le petit-déjeuner … Je me couche à …
3. Il fait … Je porte … Demain, je vais …
4. J'ai mal à la tête. Elle a mal aux pieds. J'ai mal au ventre. Il a mal au dos. J'ai mal aux oreilles.
5. verte; noires; blanche; gris; marron.
6. ce beau manteau; cet homme; ces nouvelles chaussures; cette vieille église; cet arbre.
7. Il fait beau. Il pleut. Il neige. Il fait froid. Il fait vingt degrés.
8. je fais, tu fais, il fait, nous faisons, vous faites, ils font.
9. fais du; joue du; jouons au; font de la; joues de la.
10. je me lève, tu te lèves, il se lève, nous nous levons, ils se lèvent.
11. Je veux sortir, mais je dois faire la vaisselle, alors je ne peux pas venir.
12. je finis, nous finissons, ils finissent; j'attends, nous attendons, ils attendent.
13. nous croyons, ils croient; nous voyons, ils voient.
14. j'ai parlé; nous avons fini; ils ont attendu; elle a fait; tu as vu.
15. elle est allée; nous sommes arrivés; ils sont partis; je suis venue; Marie est née.
16. L'année dernière, nous sommes allé(e)s au Québec (à Québec); nous avons vu la vieille ville et nous avons beaucoup mangé.
17. La sagesse est meilleure que l'or. Mon frère est plus grand que moi. La Belgique est moins grande que la France.
18. au Sénégal (Dakar); en France; aux États-Unis; au Canada (Ottawa).
19. Noël, Pâques, la Pentecôte (l'Épiphanie, la Toussaint); for example the galette des rois at Epiphany or the santons in the crèche; Samuel de Champlain, in 1608.
20. (a) I am the resurrection, and the life: Christ gives eternal life to those who believe in him. (b) He is not here: for he is risen: the empty tomb is the proof of the resurrection. (c) I have fought a good fight: Paul, facing death, has been faithful to the end.

> Printable answer key (PDF, for the parent)